



**SIXTH FORM  
BOOSTER  
2024**

**Name:** \_\_\_\_\_



# GRAMMAR PRACTICE

# Verbs

## THE PRESENT TENSE

### 9 Present Simple and Present Continuous

#### Present simple

##### FORM

##### REMEMBER!

*I/You/We/They eat; He/She/It eats. I/You/We/They do not (don't) eat.  
Do I/You/he/she/it/we/they eat? He/She/It does not (doesn't) eat.*

**Note** the endings with **he, she,** and **it**. If the verb ends in **ss, sh, ch,** or **x**, add **es**:  
*He washes (wash ends in sh)  
She catches (catch ends in ch)*

##### USE

- for something that is permanently true:  
*She comes from Argentina.  
I don't speak Chinese.*
- for habits and repeated actions:  
*How often do you go to the gym?  
He usually leaves work at 6 o'clock.*

#### Present continuous

##### FORM

##### Positive

I	am	→ I'm	working.
He She It	is	→ He's She's It's	
We You They	are	→ We're You're They're	

##### Question

Am	I	working?
Is	he she it	
Are	we you they	

##### Negative with **not**

I	am	→ I'm	not working.
He She It	is	→ He's She's It's	
We You They	are	→ We're You're They're	

##### Negative with **n't**

-		working.
He She It	isn't	
We You They	aren't	

## USE

- For an action in progress now:  
*Are you waiting for the bus?*  
*I'm writing a letter to Julie.*

## Practice

Complete these sentences, putting the verbs into the correct tense.

- 1 What's that book you *are reading?* (read)
- 2 We usually *go* to the beach at the weekend. (go)
- 3 She ..... to me every week. (write)
- 4 'Where's Kevin?'  
'He ..... football with his friends.' (play)
- 5 My boss ..... to New York every month. (fly)
- 6 Can you answer the phone? I ..... . (cook)
- 7 Look! That man ..... to get into our car. (try)
- 8 ..... to school every morning? (you walk)
- 9 The bank ..... on Sundays. (not open)
- 10 Her son ..... her very often. (not visit)
- 11 He ..... his car every weekend. (wash)
- 12 Sorry, you can't talk to him. He ..... a shower. (have)
- 13 'What ..... ?'  
'My homework.' (do)
- 14 Snakes ..... for most of the day. (sleep)
- 15 Many people ..... this kind of food. (not like)
- 16 'Could you be quiet, please – I ..... the radio.' (listen)
- 17 We ..... in a hotel at the moment. (stay)
- 18 She ..... to work by train. (go)
- 19 They never ..... to me. (write)
- 20 I ..... for Mary. She's late. (wait)

## 10 Verbs using Present Simple rather than Present Continuous

### USE

- Certain verbs generally use only the simple form, and are not used with the continuous. These are verbs which do not describe activities. They include:
    - a) verbs of thinking and understanding:  
*I **believe** you.*  
*I don't **understand**.*  
*What do you **think**?*
    - b) verbs of seeing, hearing, feeling, etc.:  
*I don't **like** him.*  
*How do you **feel**?*  
*I **want** to go.*
  - These verbs can use the present continuous when they become activity verbs:  
*Be quiet, please: I'm **thinking**.* (Here **thinking** is an activity, like **working**.)  
*I'm **seeing** the president tomorrow.* (**seeing** = **meeting**)
  - There is a difference between these verbs:  
**listen** - **hear**; **watch** - **see**; **look** - **see**  
**Listen**, **watch** and **look** are deliberate activities, and can use the present continuous:  
*I'm **listening** to the radio.*  
**Hear** and **see** are not deliberate activities, and do not usually use the continuous.
- Exercise 66 for an explanation of simple and continuous aspects.

### Practice

Circle the correct form of the verb in these sentences.

- 1 You're very quiet. What (*do you think* / *are you thinking*) about?
- 2 What (*are you thinking* / *do you think*) about the new sports centre?
- 3 I'm sorry (*I'm not agreeing* / *I don't agree*) with you.
- 4 (*Are you looking* / *Do you look*) for me?
- 5 (*Do you prefer* / *Are you preferring*) walking to cycling?
- 6 (*I don't like* / *I'm not liking*) him at the moment.
- 7 (*I hear* / *I'm hearing*) you're leaving us.
- 8 I'm afraid (*I'm not remembering* / *I don't remember*) where we met.
- 9 (*Do you listen* / *Are you listening*) to the radio at the moment?
- 10 (*I'm hating* / *I hate*) cold evenings.
- 11 (*I'm not looking forward* / *I don't look forward*) to my holiday.
- 12 (*They're looking* / *They look*) at clothes at the moment.
- 13 Why (*aren't you agreeing* / *don't you agree*) with the idea?
- 14 What (*is this meaning?* / *does this mean?*)
- 15 (*I'm not understanding* / *I don't understand*) the lessons.
- 16 (*I never agree* / *I'm never agreeing*) with what he says.
- 17 (*He knows* / *He's knowing*) you're wrong.
- 18 (*They watch* / *They're watching*) us.

## 11 Present Simple and Present Continuous: permanent and temporary

### CONTRAST

- The present simple is used to express permanent facts.
- The present continuous is sometimes used as a contrast to the present simple, to show temporary events:

*I **live** in Mexico, though I'm **staying** in Texas at the moment.*

*I'm **living** in Paris just now, but I **come** from Belgium.*

### Practice

Complete these sentences, putting the verbs into the correct tense.

- 1 I ~~live~~ in Washington, though I'm ~~staying~~ in London at the moment.
- 2 The car isn't here today because Sheila (use) ..... it.  
She generally (use) ..... the bus, but the drivers are on strike.
- 3 We usually (stay) ..... at home on Fridays, but we came out tonight because we (celebrate) ..... our anniversary.
- 4 I (come) ..... from Scotland, though I (live) ..... in London just now.
- 5 I (stay) ..... with my parents at the moment, though I (have) ..... my own flat.
- 6 They usually (work) ..... at the weekends, though they (not work) ..... at the moment.
- 7 He (teach) ..... in a language school, though he (work) ..... in a factory at the moment because the school's on holiday.
- 8 The business usually (make) ..... money, though it (do) ..... rather badly just now.
- 9 I usually (work) ..... at night, though I (have) ..... a holiday at the moment.
- 10 I (study) ..... French at the moment, but I (not speak) ..... it very well yet.

## Present Tense: Simple and Progressive

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the Present Tense.

1. Jeremy usually \_\_\_\_\_ to school by bus but today his dad \_\_\_\_\_ him. (GO, DRIVE)
  
2. How often \_\_\_\_\_ to the park for a picnic? (YOU GO)
  
3. Northern California \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of rain during the wintertime but this winter it \_\_\_\_\_ at all. (GET, NOT RAIN)
  
4. My sister often \_\_\_\_\_ in bed but today she is so tired that she \_\_\_\_\_ anything at all. (READ, NOT READ)
  
5. Look to your right! Mary \_\_\_\_\_ her little sister to school. How sweet! (BRING)
  
6. Mom can't help you right now because she \_\_\_\_\_ dinner. (PREPARE)
  
7. The neighbours' boys always \_\_\_\_\_ to school late. (COME)
  
8. My parents never \_\_\_\_\_ cigarettes in front of us. (SMOKE)

9. I can't understand him because  
I \_\_\_\_\_ any French. (NOT KNOW)

10. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ eating sweets. Every morning she  
\_\_\_\_\_ coffee with lots of sweets. (LIKE, HAVE)

11. What \_\_\_\_\_? – I think they  
\_\_\_\_\_ to be fed by the tourists. (THE DUCKS DO,  
WAIT)

12. It \_\_\_\_\_ very hard at the moment. (RAIN)

13. They normally \_\_\_\_\_ TV on Sundays but today they  
\_\_\_\_\_ a nap. (WATCH, TAKE)

14. Dad \_\_\_\_\_ TV when he  
\_\_\_\_\_ home from the office. (NOT USUALLY WATCH,  
COME)

15. Every Monday my dad \_\_\_\_\_ to  
work by train because my mom \_\_\_\_\_ the  
car. (GO, NEED)

16. Our teacher often \_\_\_\_\_ at us  
when she's in a bad mood. (SHOUT)

17. I \_\_\_\_\_ for a new car which I want  
to buy as soon as possible. (SAVE)



18. What \_\_\_\_\_ right now? –  
He \_\_\_\_\_ in the river. (TOM DO, SWIM)

**Fill in the correct form of the verb given: Present Tense Simple or Progressive**

1. Dad \_\_\_\_\_ us to school every morning. **(DRIVE)**
2. Max \_\_\_\_\_ at an Internet café this summer. **(WORK)**
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ abroad this year because of the pandemic. **(NOT GO)**
4. It never \_\_\_\_\_ in the Atacama Desert in Chile. **(RAIN)**
5. Marty \_\_\_\_\_ to the fitness centre on Mondays. **(NOT USUALLY GO)**
6. What is that? – I \_\_\_\_\_ sounds that are not there. **(HEAR)**
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ of leaving Britain next year. We might go to America. **(THINK)**
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ my ex-husband next Monday. **(SEE)**
9. This box \_\_\_\_\_ a lot. What is in it? **(WEIGH)**
10. What \_\_\_\_\_ under the table? – Is there anything wrong? **(YOU DO)**
11. She never \_\_\_\_\_ to anyone about her problems. **(TALK)**
12. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ very sad. What's happened to her? **(LOOK)**
13. They \_\_\_\_\_ a few days in Stockholm next month. **(SPEND)**
14. You can't go in. They \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting. **(HAVE)**
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ I'll have a cup of coffee. I'm so tired. **(THINK)**

16. \_\_\_\_\_ fishing with me on Sunday? – I don't know. I'll think about it. **(YOU GO)**

17. I \_\_\_\_\_ here as a waiter on weekends. **(WORK)**

18. Max \_\_\_\_\_ to be a nice student. Let's see how he \_\_\_\_\_ in class. **(APPEAR, HE DO)**

19. I \_\_\_\_\_ what this letter means. It \_\_\_\_\_ no sense. **(NOT UNDERSTAND, MAKE)**

20. I \_\_\_\_\_ the dog for a walk because it's so sunny outside. **(TAKE)**

21. \_\_\_\_\_ at night? **(YOU EVER DREAM)**

22. I \_\_\_\_\_ on you to help me organise the meeting. **(COUNT)**

23. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ a video conference in her company next week. **(HOLD)**

24. Why \_\_\_\_\_ to what he has to say. **(YOU NOT EVER LISTEN)**

25. I \_\_\_\_\_ meat. I'm a vegetarian. **(NOT EAT)**

**Complete the sentences using the correct form of the present tense.**

1. It often \_\_\_\_\_ in Ireland. That's why they call it the "Green Island". But it \_\_\_\_\_ there at the moment. **(RAIN, NOT RAIN)**

2. Such behaviour normally \_\_\_\_\_ me furious **(MAKE)**.

3. I \_\_\_\_\_ a word he says. **(NOT BELIEVE)**

4. I \_\_\_\_\_ a hat today because it's such a special event. **(WEAR)**

5. Susan \_\_\_\_\_ an email to her parents nearly every Saturday evening. **(WRITE)**

6. Stop right now! You \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers every time the ball \_\_\_\_\_ in the flower bed. **(BREAK, LAND)**
7. Where is Jimmy? – I don't know. I \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ tennis with his younger brother, Mark. **(THINK, PLAY)**
8. My mum \_\_\_\_\_ a party for her best friends once a year. **(ORGANISE)**
9. She \_\_\_\_\_ in London, but she \_\_\_\_\_ with friends up in Scotland. **(LIVE, CURRENTLY STAY)**
10. Our headmaster rarely \_\_\_\_\_ a class. He \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of administrative work to do. **(TEACH, HAVE)**
11. As the private secretary of the boss I \_\_\_\_\_ up to a hundred emails every day. **(READ)**
12. Look at her! – She \_\_\_\_\_ in a non-smoking area. **(SMOKE)**
13. \_\_\_\_\_ to a tennis club? **(YOU BELONG)**
14. Dana \_\_\_\_\_ reading a good novel **(LOVE).**
15. Songs that are not very popular \_\_\_\_\_ very well. **(NOT SELL)**
16. My brother isn't here. He \_\_\_\_\_ Spain at the moment. **(TOUR)**
17. Tom always \_\_\_\_\_ the strangest questions in class. **(ASK)**
18. I \_\_\_\_\_ lottery tickets every week, but I \_\_\_\_\_ anything **(BUY, NEVER WIN)**
19. You can't disturb them. They \_\_\_\_\_ a game of cards. **(PLAY)**
20. Can't you see that I \_\_\_\_\_ on my thesis? – I \_\_\_\_\_ you to disturb me. **(WORK, NOT WANT)**

21. Our children \_\_\_\_\_ going skiing with us. **(ENJOY)**
22. The plane \_\_\_\_\_ the runway now. You are too late.  
**(LEAVE)**
23. I \_\_\_\_\_ websites for a living. What \_\_\_\_\_?  
**(CREATE, YOU DO)**
24. She \_\_\_\_\_ of leaving home and going to Australia for a year. **(THINK)**
25. I told you that I \_\_\_\_\_ with you any more. You're simply not a team player. **(NOT WORK)**

# THE PAST

## 12 Past Simple and Past Continuous

### Past simple

#### FORM

#### REMEMBER!

Positive      Question      Negative  
She played    **Did** she play?    She **didn't** play.

- For irregular verb forms, see Exercise 29.

#### USE

- For a completed action or state in the past.  
*I saw a great film last night.*  
*We lived in Sydney for two years.*

### Past continuous

#### FORM

#### REMEMBER!

*I/He/She/It was running.*  
*We/You/They were running.*  
*Was I/he/she/it running?*  
*Were we/you/they running?*  
*I/He/She/It was not (wasn't) running.*  
*We/You/They were not (weren't) running.*

#### USE

- To describe a past action at some point between its beginning and its end:  
*At 8 o'clock last night we were having dinner.*  
*He was walking down the road when he heard a loud noise.*

### Practice

Complete these sentences by putting the verbs into the past simple or the past continuous.

- 1 Do you like this picture? My uncle *paint*ed it. (paint)
- 2 We *have* *were having* lunch when we heard the news. (have)
- 3 He broke his arm when he ..... rugby. (play)
- 4 Kylie ..... her first film when she was 21. (make)
- 5 ..... the football match yesterday? (you see)
- 6 I ..... on the computer when the earthquake happened.  
(work)
- 7 Who was that man you ..... to when I came in? (talk)
- 8 She was so tired that she ..... for twelve hours. (sleep)

- 9 The fire ..... the old church completely. (destroy)
- 10 I ..... in the queue when the robber came in. (wait)
- 11 I ..... a bath when she phoned. (have)
- 12 They ..... on the door, then they went in. (knock)
- 13 Mark and Theresa ..... in Poland for many years. (live)
- 14 The police ..... them lots of questions before they released them. (ask)
- 15 We ..... tea when they arrived. (have)
- 16 What ..... when the alarm sounded? (you do)
- 17 The factory ..... six thousand cars last year. (make)
- 18 She ..... anything to my parents. (not say)
- 19 James ..... through the forest when the storm started.  
(walk)

### 13 Past continuous as narrative

The past continuous is often used in a past simple narrative to describe the background history or environment:

It was a typical summer afternoon: the sun **was beating** down, the cars **were creeping** slowly round the corner of the park. Five or six children **were playing** in the stream by the fountain, jumping in and out of the water, their laughter mixing with the noise of the traffic. All the world **was wearing** shorts and T-shirts, or bathing costumes; yet Walter Harrison, sitting on a park bench in his overcoat, **was feeling** cold and lonely. 'Where will it all end?' he thought, as he watched the children splashing and laughing. After a few minutes, he got up and walked through the park gates. His adventure was about to begin ...

#### Practice

In your notebook, write the verbs in this story in the past simple or past continuous. Sometimes both tenses are possible. Choose the one that is most likely.

He stopped just before putting his key in the front door. Something was happening in the back garden. Quietly, he crept around the side of the house and <sup>1</sup>(look) through the gate. Two men <sup>2</sup>(stand) at the back of the house, holding a ladder. A third man was at the top of the ladder, and a fourth inside the house: he <sup>3</sup>(pass) furniture through the window to his partner, who <sup>4</sup>(give) it to his friends below. All four <sup>5</sup>(work) quietly and efficiently, and the pile of furniture in the garden <sup>6</sup>(get) bigger by the minute. Derek <sup>7</sup>(can not) believe his eyes: the team of strangers <sup>8</sup>(empty) his entire flat, and they <sup>9</sup>(behave) as if this was the most normal thing in the world! He <sup>10</sup>(cough) loudly, and then <sup>11</sup>(say) 'Excuse me!' – and the man at the top of the ladder <sup>12</sup>(drop) his portable TV onto the concrete below.

## Past Tense: Simple and Progressive

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the Past Tense.

1. While the policeman \_\_\_\_\_ out of the window, he \_\_\_\_\_ that a blue SUV \_\_\_\_\_ down the road. (LOOK, NOTICE, PARK)
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ on my report when the phone \_\_\_\_\_. My wife \_\_\_\_\_ to know when I \_\_\_\_\_ home. (WORK, RING, WANT, COME)
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ down the street when he \_\_\_\_\_ his old schoolteacher on the other side. (WALK, SEE)
4. During the time I \_\_\_\_\_ in South Africa I never \_\_\_\_\_ a serious crime. (SPEND, SEE)
5. While they \_\_\_\_\_ lunch at the new restaurant, a journalist \_\_\_\_\_ up to them and \_\_\_\_\_ to ask a few questions. (HAVE, COME, WANT)
6. The farmer \_\_\_\_\_ the whole neighbourhood with fruit and vegetables. (SUPPLY)
7. The hairdresser \_\_\_\_\_ up her shop, \_\_\_\_\_ into the car and \_\_\_\_\_ home. (LOCK, GET, DRIVE)

8. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ to contact me at the office, but he  
\_\_\_\_\_ me because  
I \_\_\_\_\_ lunch with a customer. (TRY,  
CANNOT REACH, HAVE)

9. Jack \_\_\_\_\_ over the carpet because he  
\_\_\_\_\_ attention to where  
he \_\_\_\_\_. (TRIP, NOT PAY, GO)

10. Where \_\_\_\_\_ when  
I \_\_\_\_\_ across you yesterday? (YOU GO, COME)

11. I \_\_\_\_\_ him off at the airport when the police  
\_\_\_\_\_ and  
\_\_\_\_\_ him. (SEE, COME, ARREST)

12. The old man \_\_\_\_\_ on the pavement, so James  
\_\_\_\_\_ to help him. (FALL, STOP)

13. How \_\_\_\_\_ your leg? – Well, I  
\_\_\_\_\_ on the ladder when,  
suddenly, I \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ my balance and  
\_\_\_\_\_. (YOU BREAK, STAND, LOSE, FALL)

14. She \_\_\_\_\_ in France at the time she  
\_\_\_\_\_ the bad news. (LIVE, RECEIVE)



**Past Tense – Simple or Progressive: Fill in the correct form.**

1. George \_\_\_\_\_ off the ladder while he \_\_\_\_\_ the ceiling. (**fall, paint**)
2. Last night I \_\_\_\_\_ in bed when I suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ a scream. (**read, hear**)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ TV when I \_\_\_\_\_ you? (**you watch, phone**)
4. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ for me when I \_\_\_\_\_. (**wait, arrive**)
5. Maisie \_\_\_\_\_ up the kitchen when John \_\_\_\_\_ her to marry him. (**clean, ask**)
6. The house \_\_\_\_\_ £ 150,000 in 2003. (**cost**)
7. The fire \_\_\_\_\_ at six in the morning. (**still burn**)
8. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ a new job a week ago (**get**).
9. Columbus \_\_\_\_\_ America over 500 years ago (**discover**)
10. She \_\_\_\_\_ not interested in the book because she \_\_\_\_\_ it (**be, not understand**)
11. \_\_\_\_\_ at school yesterday? (**you be**)
12. We \_\_\_\_\_ in a house near the sea last summer (**live**)
13. She \_\_\_\_\_ the piano very well when she \_\_\_\_\_ young (**can play, be**)
14. She \_\_\_\_\_ the office very early last night (**leave**).
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ a friend while I \_\_\_\_\_ the shopping (**meet, do**)
16. I \_\_\_\_\_ for my things when I \_\_\_\_\_ someone call my name (**pay, hear**)
17. I \_\_\_\_\_ around and \_\_\_\_\_ Judy. (**turn, see**)
18. She \_\_\_\_\_ a bright yellow dress when I \_\_\_\_\_ her last (**wear, see**)
19. We \_\_\_\_\_ to have a cup of tea. (**decide**)

20. While the waiter \_\_\_\_\_ up the pieces of glass he \_\_\_\_\_ his finger (**pick, cut**)
21. Then we \_\_\_\_\_ the cafe and \_\_\_\_\_ good bye (**leave, say**)
22. I \_\_\_\_\_ the fire at six and it \_\_\_\_\_ brightly when Tom came in at seven. (**light, still burn**)
23. My dog \_\_\_\_\_ along quietly when Mary's Pekinese \_\_\_\_\_ him. (**walk, attack**)
24. When I \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_ lunch. She said she always \_\_\_\_\_ lunch at 12:30. (**arrive, have, have**)
25. What \_\_\_\_\_ of his last book? –I \_\_\_\_\_ it a lot (**you think, like**)
26. He suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ that he \_\_\_\_\_ in the wrong direction. (**realize, travel**)
27. He \_\_\_\_\_ guitar when someone \_\_\_\_\_ the window and \_\_\_\_\_ out a bucket of water. (**play, open, throw**)
28. He \_\_\_\_\_ us to go out in the boat yesterday because a strong wind \_\_\_\_\_ (**not allow, blow**)
29. The next day, as they \_\_\_\_\_ that the police \_\_\_\_\_ for them, they \_\_\_\_\_ the coats in the woods and \_\_\_\_\_ off in different directions. (**know, look, hide, go**)
30. When I \_\_\_\_\_ home they \_\_\_\_\_ around a fire. Jack \_\_\_\_\_ a crossword puzzle, Judy \_\_\_\_\_ and the others \_\_\_\_\_. Mother \_\_\_\_\_ at me and said : “ Come and sit down” (**come, sit, do, knit, read, smile**)

**Fill in the correct form of the past tense.**

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ my old friend in town the other day. He \_\_\_\_\_ to ignore me and \_\_\_\_\_ somewhere else. (**SEE, SEEM, LOOK**)

2. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ a photo of us while we \_\_\_\_\_ up the tree. **(TAKE, CLIMB)**
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ Martha at the airport last week. She \_\_\_\_\_ for the arrival of her sister while we \_\_\_\_\_ to New York. **(MEET, WAIT, TRAVEL)**
4. "What \_\_\_\_\_ to him? – He \_\_\_\_\_ totally surprised when I \_\_\_\_\_ him. " – **(YOU SAY, LOOK, SEE)**
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ exam papers when I \_\_\_\_\_ him. **(CORRECT, VISIT)**
6. A man \_\_\_\_\_ on the road while I \_\_\_\_\_ my bike. Luckily, I \_\_\_\_\_ not to crash into him. **(FALL, RIDE, MANAGE)**
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ a few miles off the coast when a horrible thunderstorm \_\_\_\_\_ up. We \_\_\_\_\_ to get to safety as soon as possible. **(SAIL, COME, HAVE)**
8. I haven't seen him for ages. When I last \_\_\_\_\_ him, he \_\_\_\_\_ for a new job. **(SEE, LOOK)**
9. While the two teams \_\_\_\_\_ up everyone \_\_\_\_\_ a flag. It \_\_\_\_\_ a very emotional moment. **(WARM, WAVE, BE)**
10. "What \_\_\_\_\_ when I \_\_\_\_\_ to your place yesterday evening?" – "I \_\_\_\_\_ the baby". **(YOU DO, COME, FEED)**
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ down a dark alley when suddenly I \_\_\_\_\_ footsteps. I \_\_\_\_\_ around and \_\_\_\_\_ that an old woman with a dog \_\_\_\_\_ me. **(WALK, HEAR, TURN, SEE, FOLLOW)**
12. "Why \_\_\_\_\_ out last night?" – "I \_\_\_\_\_ too tired and \_\_\_\_\_ to stay at home." **(YOU NOT GO, BE, DECIDE)**
13. The policeman asked me, " How fast \_\_\_\_\_ when you \_\_\_\_\_ the old lady in front of you?" **(YOU DRIVE, SEE)**

14. Mom \_\_\_\_\_ dinner when we \_\_\_\_\_ home from football practice. **(PREPARE, GET)**

15. When I \_\_\_\_\_ young, I always \_\_\_\_\_ to be a pilot. **(BE, WANT)**

16. Last Sunday afternoon I \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk in the park and \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of coffee at a local restaurant. **(GO, HAVE)**

17. When they \_\_\_\_\_ to the airport the plane \_\_\_\_\_ off. **(GET, JUST TAKE)**

18. I \_\_\_\_\_ on a bench in the park when a man \_\_\_\_\_ up to me and \_\_\_\_\_ to know what time it \_\_\_\_\_. **(SIT, COME, WANT, BE)**

**Complete the following sentences with the correct form (Past Simple or Past Continuous).**

1. A: What (you, do) \_\_\_\_\_ when you heard that noise?

B: I (try) \_\_\_\_\_ to change a light bulb that had burnt out.

2. After I (find) \_\_\_\_\_ the wallet full of money, I (go, immediately) \_\_\_\_\_ to the police and (turn) \_\_\_\_\_ it in.

3. The doctor (say) \_\_\_\_\_ that Brian (be) \_\_\_\_\_ too weak to go to work and that he (need) \_\_\_\_\_ to stay at home for a couple of days.

4. My best friend (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ at my house a little before 9:00 pm, but I (be, not) \_\_\_\_\_ there. I (study) \_\_\_\_\_ at the library for my final examination in Italian.

5. John is in the living room working on his computer. At this time yesterday, he (work, also) \_\_\_\_\_ on his computer. That's all he ever does!

6. A: I (call) \_\_\_\_\_ you last night after dinner, but you (be, not)

\_\_\_\_\_ there. Where were you?

B: I (work) \_\_\_\_\_ out at the gym.

7. When I (walk) \_\_\_\_\_ into the busy office, the secretaries (talk) \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone with customers, a clerk (work, busily) \_\_\_\_\_ at his desk, and two managers (discuss, quietly) \_\_\_\_\_ methods to improve customer service.

8. I (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ a thriller on T.V. when the electricity went out. Now I am never going to find out how the film ends.

9. Samantha (be) \_\_\_\_\_ in the room when Bob (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ me what happened, but she didn't hear anything because she (listen, not) \_\_\_\_\_.

10. It's strange that you (call) \_\_\_\_\_ because I (think, just) \_\_\_\_\_ about you.

11. The Titanic (cross) \_\_\_\_\_ the Atlantic when it (strike) \_\_\_\_\_ an iceberg.

12. When I entered the store, a couple of merchants (bargain, noisily) \_\_\_\_\_ and (try) \_\_\_\_\_ to sell their goods to naive tourists who (hunt) \_\_\_\_\_ for souvenirs. Some young boys (lead) \_\_\_\_\_ their donkeys through the narrow streets on their way home. A couple of men (argue) \_\_\_\_\_ over the price of a leather belt. I (walk) \_\_\_\_\_ over to a man who (sell) \_\_\_\_\_ fruit and (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ a banana.

13. The firemen (rescue) \_\_\_\_\_ the old woman who (be) \_\_\_\_\_ trapped on the third floor of the burning building.

14. I was very upset! He (leave, always) \_\_\_\_\_ his dirty dishes in the sink. I think he (expect) \_\_\_\_\_ me to do them up for him.

15. Samantha (live) \_\_\_\_\_ in Cambridge for more than two years.  
In fact, she (live) \_\_\_\_\_ there when I was a student.

## 14 Present Perfect

### FORM

has/have + past participle

### REMEMBER!

*I/You/We/They have ('ve) finished.*  
*He/She/It has ('s) finished.*  
*Have I/we/you/they finished?*  
*Has he/she/it finished?*  
*I/We/You/They have not (haven't) finished.*  
*He/She/It has not (hasn't) finished.*

### USE

The present perfect is used to show a connection in the speaker's mind between the past and the present. This occurs in two main ways.

a) the unfinished past:

*He's been here for 10 minutes. (and he is still here now)*  
*We've lived here since 1996. (and we still live here now)*  
*I've written three letters today.*  
*She's travelled to six countries since she started the job.*

b) the indefinite past:

*I've broken a glass.*  
*John has lost his job.*  
*I've just heard the news.*  
*Have you finished that report yet?*  
*Have you ever been to China?*  
*She's never flown in a plane.*  
*She's the best teacher I've ever had.*

### Practice

Choose the correct response from the following page.

- 1 Do you know your neighbours well? .....
- 2 I'd like to speak to Mr Jones, please. ....
- 3 You look tired. ....
- 4 What's the matter? .....
- 5 Shall we cycle into town? .....
- 6 Have you ever been to London? .....
- 7 You're looking very happy. ....
- 8 Can't you go a little bit faster? .....
- 9 Do you like skiing? .....
- 10 Why don't you come out with us tonight? .....
- 11 We ought to book our flight. ....
- 12 What do you think of my essay? .....
- 13 Do you know where Sarah is? .....

- 14 Did you enjoy New Zealand? .....
- 15 Why isn't Andrew at work today? .....
- a) I'm afraid I can't. Isabel's borrowed my bike for the weekend.
- b) No. I haven't seen her since she went out this morning.
- c) I'm sorry. He's just left the office.
- d) He's hurt his back so he's gone to see the doctor.
- e) I've been out every night this week and I'm exhausted.
- f) Yes. It's the most beautiful country I've ever been to.
- g) That's because we've walked 30 kilometres today.
- h) Don't worry. I've already done it.
- i) I'm sorry. This is the first time I've driven this car.
- j) I don't know. I haven't read it yet.
- k) Yes. I've just heard that I've passed my exams.
- l) I've never tried it.
- m) No, I haven't. Have you?
- n) Yes. They've lived here for ten years.
- o) I've cut my finger.

## 15 Past Simple and Present Perfect

### Practice

In your notebook, write the story, putting the verbs in brackets into the present perfect or past simple. If two answers are possible, write the more likely one.

Ann Jones is one of the most interesting people I <sup>1</sup>(meet): she is only twenty-five, but she <sup>2</sup>(travel) to over fifty different countries. Five years ago, she <sup>3</sup>(be) a typist in Birmingham, but she <sup>4</sup>(decide) to give up her job and see the world. Since then, her life <sup>5</sup>(change) completely.

The first time she <sup>6</sup>(go) abroad was seven years ago, when she <sup>7</sup>(be) just eighteen. She <sup>8</sup>(take) a boat to France and then <sup>9</sup>(hitch-hike) around Europe for five weeks. She <sup>10</sup>(visit) Europe many times since that first trip, of course, but this holiday <sup>11</sup>(be) the one which <sup>12</sup>(make) her start travelling. She <sup>13</sup>(never forget) the excitement of those five weeks – although it <sup>14</sup>(be) not all enjoyable. When she <sup>15</sup>(be) on a train, somebody <sup>16</sup>(steal) her purse: she <sup>17</sup>(lose) all her money, and <sup>18</sup>(have) to work in a restaurant for a fortnight. She <sup>19</sup>(make) some good friends there, however, and <sup>20</sup>(return) several times since then.

How did she find the money for her travels? After her first trip abroad, she <sup>21</sup>(go) home and <sup>22</sup>(work) for two years, saving all the time. Now she travels continually, finding work when her money gets low. She <sup>23</sup>(make) a lot of friends, she says, and <sup>24</sup>(learn) quite a few languages. Although she <sup>25</sup>(have) occasional difficulties and <sup>26</sup>(often be) sick, she <sup>27</sup>(never think) about giving up her travels. 'The first time I <sup>28</sup>(go) abroad <sup>29</sup>(change) my life,' she says, 'and I <sup>30</sup>(want) to travel ever since.'



**Fill in the spaces with the correct form of the verb in simple present perfect tense.**

- 1) Mark (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner already. He is not hungry.
- 2) Beth (write) \_\_\_\_\_ three letters today. She misses her family.
- 3) Yoko and Armand (take) \_\_\_\_\_ the test. Now they can relax.
- 4) Marty and I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ to Costa Rica three times. We are familiar with the culture.
- 5) I (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ six cups of water today.
- 6) Eva (sing) \_\_\_\_\_ in a chorus before. Her voice is pretty.
- 7) Chong-Li (get) \_\_\_\_\_ very good at speaking English. She has practiced a lot.
- 8) Lucy (hide) \_\_\_\_\_ in the woods. Now her friends will try to find her.
- 9) It (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a good week so far.
- 10) You (show) \_\_\_\_\_ that you are a hard worker. Good job!
- 11) Daisy (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ a dress to work every day this week.
- 12) Mr. Lee (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ from Texas to Iowa for the conference. He needs to get some rest before it starts.
- 13) Juan (ride) \_\_\_\_\_ horses since he was a little boy. It is easy for him.
- 14) Mr. and Mrs. Sanchez (become) \_\_\_\_\_ grandparents. Their daughter, Josefina, had a baby yesterday.
- 15) The movie (begin) \_\_\_\_\_. Please be quiet!

## Present Perfect and Simple Past

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs

1. So far, Jill \_\_\_\_\_ almost half of the book. (READ)
2. Do you know who \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone? – It \_\_\_\_\_ Alexander Graham Bell. (INVENT, BE)
3. On her trip across Asia, Mum \_\_\_\_\_ three countries upto now. (VISIT)
4. How many books \_\_\_\_\_ in the last few years? (HEWRITE)
5. Martha lives in Dublin. She's \_\_\_\_\_ there her whole life, ever since her dad a few years ago. (LIVE, DIE)
6. Paul and Gina \_\_\_\_\_ an hour ago. They \_\_\_\_\_ problems with their flight. (ARRIVE, HAVE)
7. Drugs \_\_\_\_\_ a huge problem in the United States. (BECOME)
8. Granddad \_\_\_\_\_ in hospital since Monday. He \_\_\_\_\_ in hospital before. (BE, NEVER BE)

9. \_\_\_\_\_ the Queen in person? No, but I  
\_\_\_\_\_ Prince Andrew at a concert  
a few months ago. (YOU EVER SEE, SEE)
10. Mozart \_\_\_\_\_ over 600 pieces  
of music during his lifetime. (WRITE)
11. They \_\_\_\_\_ to Spain on holiday last summer (GO)
12. I'm hungry. I \_\_\_\_\_ anything for hours. (NOT EAT)
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ my key and can't find it anywhere. (LOSE)
14. He \_\_\_\_\_ as a war correspondent  
during the second Iraq war. (WORK)
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ a huge meal for lunch and simply  
can't eat anything at the moment. (HAVE)
16. It \_\_\_\_\_ yet this week, but last week it really  
\_\_\_\_\_ a lot. (NOT RAIN, RAIN)
17. According to her statement,  
she \_\_\_\_\_ at the Crown Hotel from last Monday to Thursday.  
(STAY)
18. Who \_\_\_\_\_ at the cinema last night? (YOU  
MEET)

**Fill in the correct form of the verb given: Past or Present Perfect Simple**

1. So far, Jill \_\_\_\_\_ almost half of the book. **(READ)**
2. Do you know who \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone? – It \_\_\_\_\_ Alexander Graham Bell. **(INVENT, BE)**
3. On her trip across Asia, Mum \_\_\_\_\_ three countries up to now. **(VISIT)**
4. How many books \_\_\_\_\_ in the last few years? **(HE WRITE)**
5. Martha lives in Dublin. She's \_\_\_\_\_ there her whole life, ever since her dad \_\_\_\_\_ a few years ago. **(LIVE, DIE)**
6. Paul and Gina \_\_\_\_\_ an hour ago. They \_\_\_\_\_ problems with their flight. **(ARRIVE, HAVE)**
7. Drugs \_\_\_\_\_ a huge problem in the United States. **(BECOME)**
8. Granddad \_\_\_\_\_ in hospital since Monday. He \_\_\_\_\_ in hospital before. **(BE, NEVER BE)**
9. \_\_\_\_\_ the Queen in person? No, but I \_\_\_\_\_ Prince Andrew at a concert a few months ago. **(YOU EVER SEE, SEE)**
10. Mozart \_\_\_\_\_ over 600 pieces of music during his lifetime. **(WRITE)**
11. They \_\_\_\_\_ to Spain on holiday last summer **(GO)**
12. I'm hungry. I \_\_\_\_\_ anything for hours. **(NOT EAT)**
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ my key and can't find it anywhere. **(LOSE)**
14. He \_\_\_\_\_ as a war correspondent during the second Iraq war. **(WORK)**
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ a huge meal for lunch and simply can't eat anything at the moment. **(HAVE)**

16. It \_\_\_\_\_ yet this week, but last week it really \_\_\_\_\_ a lot. **(NOT RAIN, RAIN)**
17. According to her statement, she \_\_\_\_\_ at the Crown Hotel from last Monday to Thursday. **(STAY)**
18. Who \_\_\_\_\_ at the cinema last night? **(YOU MEET)**
19. I don't need any new driving lessons. I \_\_\_\_\_ the test. **(ALREADY PASS)**
20. Fortunately, I \_\_\_\_\_ any bones. **(NEVER BREAK)**
21. My cousins \_\_\_\_\_ in Dublin since their childhood. Marvin \_\_\_\_\_ to America when he was 16 but only \_\_\_\_\_ there for a few years. Then he \_\_\_\_\_ back to Ireland. **(BE, GO, STAY, COME)**
22. I \_\_\_\_\_ the car. Now it looks great! **(WASH)**
23. She \_\_\_\_\_ smoking a few months ago. **(STOP)**
24. Back in March, I \_\_\_\_\_ enough money to buy a new car. Now, I can afford one. **(NOT HAVE)**
25. Scientist \_\_\_\_\_ a major discovery in medicine. **(JUST MAKE)**

**Fill in the correct form of the verb in brackets: Past Simple or Present Perfect Simple**

1. The weather around here \_\_\_\_\_ terrible in the last few weeks. **(BE)**
2. Maria \_\_\_\_\_ her suitcase last night. **(PACK)**
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ volleyball since I was a teenager. **(NOT PLAY)**
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ wash the dishes. They're all clean now **(HELP)**
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ the factory. – Really? When \_\_\_\_\_? **(CLOSE, THAT HAPPEN)**
6. \_\_\_\_\_ yet? **(YOUR BUSINESS COURSE –**

**START)**

7. How long \_\_\_\_\_ that camera? – About a month. I \_\_\_\_\_ it because it was on sale just before Christmas. **(YOU HAVE, BUY)**

8. \_\_\_\_\_ last week's magazine? – It must be here because I \_\_\_\_\_ it on Monday. **(YOU SEE, BUY)**

9. The books you ordered \_\_\_\_\_. The delivery service \_\_\_\_\_ them an hour ago. **(ARRIVE, BRING)**

10. The Queen \_\_\_\_\_ her two-week tour through Australia yesterday. **(START)**

11. The plane from New York \_\_\_\_\_. The passengers are getting out. **(JUST LAND)**

12. We \_\_\_\_\_ a party at school for ages. **(NOT HAVE)**

13. I \_\_\_\_\_ a cold in school a few days ago and \_\_\_\_\_ ill ever since. **(CATCH, BE)**

14. Dinosaurs \_\_\_\_\_ around the earth millions of years ago. **(WANDER)**

15. Prices \_\_\_\_\_ up last year, but they \_\_\_\_\_ by 8% already this year. **(NOT GO, INCREASE)**

16. I'm so tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ all the way to the underground station. **(WALK)**

17. We \_\_\_\_\_ home from our holidays and getting ready to settle in. **(JUST COME)**

18. She \_\_\_\_\_ in London for three years. However, when her mom \_\_\_\_\_, she \_\_\_\_\_ to Leeds and \_\_\_\_\_ there ever since. **(LIVE, DIE, MOVE, LIVE)**

19. Dusty \_\_\_\_\_ a match so far this year. He is more successful than last year, when he \_\_\_\_\_ the first three matches. **(NEVER LOSE, LOSE)**

20. He \_\_\_\_\_ off the ladder and \_\_\_\_\_ his ankle. That's why he \_\_\_\_\_ in school for a while. **(FALL, BREAK, NOT BE)**

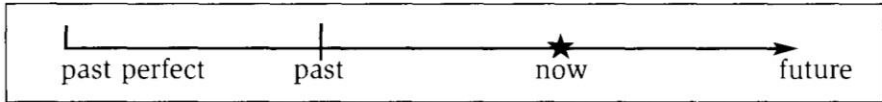
# 17 Past Perfect

## FORM

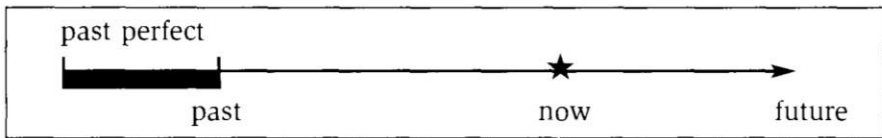
had/'d + past participle

## USE

- To describe the first of two events in the past:  
*I **had spoken** to Mr Johnson before the meeting began.*



- To describe a period of time leading up to a time in the past:  
*By 1984, we **had waited** seven years for an answer.*



**Note** the difference between past simple + past simple:  
*I **got** to the stadium at 7.15, and the game **started** at 7.30.*  
(= the game started **after** I arrived)  
and past simple + past perfect:  
*I **got** to the stadium at 7.45, and the game **had started** at 7.30.*  
(= the game started **before** I arrived)

## Practice

Write the sentences, putting one verb in each sentence into the past simple, and the other verb into the past perfect.

- When the police (arrive), the car (go).  
*When the police arrived, the car had gone.*
- When I (get) to the shop, it (close).  
.....
- They (eat) everything by the time I (arrive) at the party.  
.....  
.....
- When we (leave) the beach, the rain (already start).  
.....  
.....
- I (try) telephoning her several times but she (leave the country).  
.....  
.....

6 When I (find) my purse, someone (take) the money out of it.

.....  
.....

7 The car (go) when I (look) into the street.

.....  
.....

8 The patient (already die) by the time I (see) her.

.....  
.....

9 All the garages (close) by the time we (cross) the border.

.....  
.....

10 (You already leave) when the trouble (start)?

.....  
.....

11 The post (not arrive) when I (leave) the house this morning.

.....  
.....

12 By the time I get) into town, the shops (close).

.....  
.....



## Present, Past, Present Perfect

### Check

Write the verbs in the correct tense.

- 1 She paid for her ticket and ..... (leave)
- 2 I closed the door quietly because he ..... to sleep. (try)
- 3 How many times ..... since he came to New York? (she call)
- 4 I ..... about this for some time now. (know)
- 5 They ..... television – their favourite programme is on at the moment. (watch)
- 6 I wanted to be the first to tell her the news, but it was too late. Someone ..... her. (already tell)
- 7 The children are filthy. Where .....? (they be)
- 8 I'm going to bed. I ..... for hours and I'm tired. (work)
- 9 I think she's the nicest person I ..... (ever meet)
- 10 Mary was cleaning the windscreen when she ..... a crack in the glass. (notice)
  
- 11 I couldn't open the office door because someone ..... it. (lock)
- 12 I agree: I ..... you should apologize. (not think)
- 13 When I phoned her, she ..... her homework. (do)
- 14 We ..... for three-and-a-half hours when John finally arrived. (wait)
- 15 When I shouted, they ..... off the roof and ..... away. (jump/run)
- 16 Don't phone her just now. She ..... to her boss. (talk)

- 17 Oh! You ..... a shave! You look strange  
without a beard! (have)
- 18 I ..... military service for eighteen months.  
This is my last month. (do)
- 19 We ..... for about four hours when we  
realized that something was wrong with one of the tyres. (travel)
- 20 Mary will be ready soon. She ..... a bath at  
the moment. (have)
- 21 Sorry, I ..... . Could you say that again please?  
(not understand)
- 22 We ..... in the cafe until the rain stopped and  
then went home. (stay)
- 23 ..... here before? (you be)
- 24 There was nobody at the office. Mr Brownlow  
..... the staff to go home. (tell)
- 25 I signed the register and ..... upstairs to my  
room. (go)
- 26 He had been working in the garden, but he  
..... when he saw us. (stop)
- 27 I couldn't drive to work because Mary .....  
the car. (use)
- 28 How many times ..... him since he went to  
Edinburgh? (you see)

- 29 Peter and Jane .....: I could hear them from my room. (argue)
- 30 I ..... him since he started working here. (never trust)
- 31 I'm worried. Why ..... yet? (they not arrive)
- 32 They're very angry. They ..... to see you for the last two or three hours. (try)
- 33 I wanted to help with the washing-up, but they ..... it. (already do)
- 34 It's the most comfortable car I ..... . (ever drive)
- 35 Peter was cleaning the flat and John ..... . (the dinner)
- 36 I had a pleasant surprise when I got to my room: someone ..... some flowers there for me. (put)
- 37 ..... that we should tell him tomorrow? (you agree)
- 38 They couldn't leave the studio when I called because they ..... a film. (edit)
- 39 I ..... the machine for some time when I realised that there was no ink in it. (use)
- 40 When he warned them about the police, they ..... the country. (leave)
- 41 Don't make a noise: the children ..... to sleep. (try)
- 42 Oh! You ..... a new dress! (buy)
- 43 She ..... here for several years – four or five now, I think. (work)
- 44 We ..... in the sunshine for about twenty-five minutes when I suddenly felt sick. (sit)
- 45 He'll be ready in a moment. He ..... his shoes. (clean)
- 46 I ..... listening to their complaints all day. One of these days I'll tell them what I really think. (hate)

- 47 I ..... down on the bed and fell asleep. (lie)  
 48 I think I ..... him somewhere before. (see)  
 49 I couldn't get into the car, because the children  
 ..... the car keys. (hide)  
 50 Peter was meeting someone that night, so I  
 ..... at the office and  
 ..... for a few hours. (stay/work)

## THE FUTURE

### 20 Present Continuous, *going to*, and Future Simple

#### REMEMBER!

#### USE

##### Present continuous as future

- A planned future action:  
*I'm seeing Jessica tonight.*

##### 'Going to' future

- Planned future events:  
*They're going to open the new offices on 1st March.*
- Future events evident from something in the present:  
*Look at the snow. It's going to be difficult to get into work tomorrow.*
- Future events in a neutral way:  
*Richard's going to be the new director.*

##### Future Simple

- Statements of future fact:  
*The job will be finished by the weekend.*
- Decisions made at the time of speaking:  
*There's Eleanor. I'll go and talk to her.*
- To show willingness:  
*I'll help you.*

#### Practice

Write the following sentences in the most likely form (present continuous, *going to*, or future simple).

- 1 'We've run out of milk.'  
'Oh, have we? I ~~!!!.go~~ and get some.' (go)
- 2 'So you've moved into your new house. Congratulations!'  
'Thank you. We ~~re.going.to.have~~ a party soon.' (have)

- 3 I'm afraid I can't come to dinner on Saturday - I .....  
Tim. (meet)
- 4 Josh ..... five next Tuesday. (be)
- 5 It's raining - we ..... take an umbrella. (have to)
- 6 My cousins ..... to stay with us at the weekend.  
(come)
- 7 Look at that car! It ..... that tree! (hit)
- 8 I promise I ..... that again. (not do)
- 9 Did you hear that the company ..... a new factory?  
(open)
- 10 You look tired. Sit down and I ..... you a cup of tea.  
(make)
- 11 'I think there's someone at the door.' 'OK, I ..... (go)  
and answer it.'
- 12 ..... (you/stay) at home this weekend?
- 13 Kate's really unhappy at work so she ..... (look for)  
a new job soon.
- 14 She looks really upset. I think she ..... (cry).
- 15 I know you've got a lot to do so I ..... (try) and help  
you as much as I can.
- 16 What ..... (you/do) when you've spent all your  
money?
- 17 Kate phoned up. She ..... (come round) to see us  
this afternoon.
- 18 I'm sorry I made you so angry. I ..... (not do)  
that again.
- 19 Look at the sky. It ..... (be) a lovely day today.
- 20 I'm sorry you're leaving. I hope you ..... (come  
back) and see us soon.

## WILL vs GOING TO

Complete the sentences with the correct form of will or going to and the verbs in brackets.

- 1.- When we get home, we \_\_\_\_\_ (have) dinner.
- 2.- I know they \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) very happy if they win the match.
- 3.- They've already decided on their next summer holiday. They \_\_\_\_\_ (do) a tour of Norway.
- 4.- She thinks that the Take That concert \_\_\_\_\_ (be) really exciting.
- 5.- "What are your plans for this evening?" I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) my friends and then go to a birthday party.
- 6.- If you revise for the exam , I'm sure you \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a good result.
- 7.- The weather forecast is good for the next few days. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very sunny.
- 8.- I can't come on the march tomorrow. I \_\_\_\_\_ (look after) my cousins.
- 9.- In the future, I think humans \_\_\_\_\_ (wipe out) many different species.
- 10.-He is buying some butter and eggs because he \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a cake later.
- 11.- This homework is very easy. I know we \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it very quickly.
- 12.- In five years time, I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) at University.
- 13.- She wants to get her mum a birthday present. But she \_\_\_\_\_ (not buy) it today.
- 14.- Their suitcases are packed. They \_\_\_\_\_ (go) on holiday.
- 15.- If we go to Paris, we \_\_\_\_\_ (take) lots of pictures.
- 16.- My brother thinks it \_\_\_\_\_ (snow) tomorrow.
- 17.- It's very late! Hurry up or we \_\_\_\_\_ (be) late for work.
- 18.- Look at that boy at the top of that tree! He \_\_\_\_\_ (fall).
- 19.- When we go home, we \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV. We don't want to miss our favourite programme.
- 20.- I'm sure they \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) the match.
- 21.- It's very hot in here. I \_\_\_\_\_ (open) the window.
- 22.- It's a secret! OK I \_\_\_\_\_ (not tell) anyone.

- 23.- My cousin \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in the UK for a year.  
 24.- I \_\_\_\_\_ (love) you forever.  
 25.- I'm thirsty. I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) you a glass of water

### FUTURE TENSES EXERCISES

**Fill in the correct future tense - will future, going to or present continuous.**

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) to New York tomorrow morning.
2. I hope the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (be) nice.
3. I offered him this job. I think he \_\_\_\_\_ (take) it.
4. I promise I \_\_\_\_\_ (not tell) your secret to anyone.
5. Take your umbrella with you. It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain).
6. They \_\_\_\_\_ (play) cards this evening.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the cinema tomorrow.
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) to Seattle next summer holidays.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ (invite) 50 people to the party, and I hope everyone \_\_\_\_\_ (come).
10. That exercise looks difficult. I \_\_\_\_\_ (help) you.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the football match?
12. Are you sure they \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the match?
13. She \_\_\_\_\_ probably \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) till Thursday.
14. He \_\_\_\_\_ (not leave) tomorrow.
15. We think he \_\_\_\_\_ (come) home late in the night.

**Fill in GOING TO or WILL future.**

1. When the weather is fine, we \_\_\_\_\_ a picnic in our garden. (probably have)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ to ask him for help? (you ask)
3. Susan \_\_\_\_\_ the bathroom next weekend. (paint)
4. I think he \_\_\_\_\_ her name. (find out)
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ a walk in the garden this evening. (take)
6. Let's hope that the wind \_\_\_\_\_ away the clouds. (blow)
7. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ a good mark because she has studied hard. (get).
8. Are you sure, you \_\_\_\_\_ in a tent in your holidays? (sleep)
9. Peter \_\_\_\_\_ his new bike in the park. (ride)

10. I hope Jane \_\_\_\_\_ me to her party. (invite).
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ dad's car tomorrow afternoon. (wash)
12. Mum thinks dad \_\_\_\_\_ home early tonight. (come)
13. It \_\_\_\_\_ very cold in the mountains. Take a sweater with you. (probably be)
14. We \_\_\_\_\_ our bikes in the park. Can you come with us? (ride)
15. It's my birthday next Friday. Mum \_\_\_\_\_ a cake. (bake)



# THE PASSIVE

## 31 The passive: Present Simple, Past Simple, Present Perfect Simple



- Passive sentences describe what happens to people or things, often as a result of action by other people or things.
- Passive sentences often indicate that what happens is more important than who is responsible. For example:

**Active**

*Simon has painted the house.*

The speaker is talking about Simon and the house.

**Passive**

*The house has been painted.*

Only the house is being discussed and not the person who painted it.

**FORM**

<i>Present</i>	<i>noun/pronoun</i> + <b>is/are</b>	+ <i>past participle</i>
	The cars are	taken abroad.
<i>Past</i>	<i>noun/pronoun</i> + <b>was/were</b>	+ <i>past participle</i>
	The cars were	taken abroad.
<i>Present Perfect</i>	<i>noun/pronoun</i> + <b>has/have been</b>	+ <i>past participle</i>
	The cars have been	taken abroad.

- The rules for choice of tense are the same in the passive as they are for active sentences.

► Exercise 32 for passives in all tenses.

**Practice**

Rewrite these sentences, putting the verbs in the passive. Keep them in the same tense, and remove *they, we, someone*, etc.

1 We clean the garages every day.

*The garages are cleaned every day.*

2 Someone has given him a lot of money.

*He has been given a lot of money.*

3 The police arrested two hundred people.

*Two hundred people were arrested.*

4 We check every car engine thoroughly.

.....

5 We export this computer to seventy different countries.

.....

.....

- 6 They have cancelled the meeting.  
.....
- 7 We opened the factory at nine o'clock.  
.....
- 8 They send two million books to America every year.  
.....
- 9 We have invited all the students in the school.  
.....
- 10 We have told him not to be late again.  
.....
- 11 They posted all the letters yesterday.  
.....
- 12 The machine wraps the bread automatically.  
.....
- 13 They paid me a lot of money to do the job.  
.....
- 14 Fortunately, they didn't damage the machinery.  
.....
- 15 We send the newspapers to Scotland by train.  
.....

### 32 The passive: all tenses, simple and continuous

#### FORM

<i>Present</i>	<i>Simple:</i> <b>is/are</b> + <i>past participle</i> The letters are delivered here. <i>Continuous:</i> <b>is/are being</b> + <i>past participle</i> He's being interviewed at the moment.
----------------	--

<i>Past</i>	<i>Simple:</i> <b>was/were</b> + <i>past participle</i> They were sent by train. <i>Continuous:</i> <b>was/were being</b> + <i>past participle</i> My suit was being cleaned at the time.
-------------	--

<i>Present Perfect</i>	<i>Simple:</i> <b>has/have been</b> + <i>past participle</i> All the tickets have been sold. <i>Continuous:</i> -
------------------------	---

<i>Past Perfect</i>	<i>Simple:</i> <b>had been</b> + <i>past participle</i> I was too late: the papers had been removed. <i>Continuous:</i> -
---------------------	---

<i>Future</i>	<i>Simple:</i> <b>will be</b> + <i>past participle</i> You will be met at the station. <i>Continuous:</i> -
---------------	---

<i>Infinitive</i>	<b>(to) be</b> + <i>past participle</i> I don't want to be arrested. We shouldn't be arrested.
-------------------	--

<i>Gerund</i>	He doesn't like <b>being</b> told what to do.
---------------	---

**Notes**

- The passive is frequently used to describe scientific or mechanical processes, or in formal explanations:  
*The passive is frequently used ...*
- It is not essential to repeat the auxiliary verb **to be** in a list of processes:  
*The cars are washed, cleaned, checked, and then driven to the ports.*

**Practice**

**32a** Underline all the passives.

Acid rain is caused by burning coal or oil. When either fuel is burned, it releases poisonous gases which are carried up into the atmosphere and sometimes transported long distances.

Over 3,000 research projects have been carried out to look into acid rain, and a decision to tackle the problem has been taken in most of the western European countries. Measures have been taken in Scandinavia and in Central Europe to stop the pollution before it is dumped on the environment, and a diplomatic campaign has been launched to convince other countries that the problem has to be considered as a major ecological threat.

'Five years ago this issue was not being treated seriously,' says one leading environmental group, 'but now that damage has been reported in large areas of forest and lakeland, our politicians are being forced to take action. This problem must be solved quickly: if governments do nothing, they will be faced in two or three years' time with the accusation that they have allowed our forests to die.' A major international initiative to combat acid rain is expected in the near future.

**32b** Rewrite these sentences in the passive. The subject of the active sentence can usually be omitted; you should include it in the passive sentence only if it is necessary.

1 Someone's interviewing Dr Johnson at the moment.

Dr Johnson *'s being interviewed at the moment.*

2 You mustn't use this machine after 5.30 p.m.

This machine *mustn't be used after 5.30 p.m.*

3 We had warned him the day before not to go too near the canal.

He .....

4 They were painting the outside of the ship when the accident happened.

The outside of the ship .....

5 You must clean this machine every time you use it.

This machine .....

6 You should keep the flowers in a warm sunny place.

The flowers .....

7 They're mending your shoes at the moment.

Your shoes .....

8 Someone will drive your car to Edinburgh on Tuesday.

Your car .....

9 We don't allow smoking in this restaurant.

Smoking .....

10 You should pay your bill before you leave the hotel.

Your bill .....

11 I have told the children about the party.

The children .....

12 About thirty million people are watching this programme.

This programme .....

13 We expect students not to talk during the examination.

Students .....

## PASSIVE VOICE

Fill in the correct passive form of the verb.

1. Romeo and Juliet \_\_\_\_\_ by Shakespeare. (WRITE)
2. The books \_\_\_\_\_ yet. (NOT PUBLISH)
3. As soon as I got home, I realized that my wallet \_\_\_\_\_. (STEAL)
4. Dinner \_\_\_\_\_ between 5 and 10 p.m. every day. (SERVE)
5. No letters \_\_\_\_\_ since the start of the strike. (DELIVER)
6. The building \_\_\_\_\_ torn down when we got there (BE).
7. Progress in many fields of science \_\_\_\_\_ in the last decade. (MAKE)
8. Since last week 5 of the 7 terrorists \_\_\_\_\_. (CATCH)
9. Taxes \_\_\_\_\_ by the new government nextmonth. (INCREASE)
10. The classroom \_\_\_\_\_ next week. (REDECORATE)

11. The church \_\_\_\_\_ by a famous architect in the 18th century. (DESIGN)

12. The tunnel \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment, so it's closed for all traffic. (REPAIR)

13. My phone \_\_\_\_\_. I can't find it anywhere. (TAKE)

14. The application \_\_\_\_\_ by Friday. (MUST SEND)

15. When we first met, I had \_\_\_\_\_ a job at the bank. (ALREADY OFFER)

16. Olives \_\_\_\_\_ in Mediterranean countries. (GROW)

17. He \_\_\_\_\_ French when he spent his childhood there. (TEACH)

18. "A Hard Days Night" \_\_\_\_\_ by the Beatles. (WRITE)

19. We \_\_\_\_\_ about the hurricane for the last few days. (WARN)

20. Before the meeting was over all the food \_\_\_\_\_.

(EAT)

## PASSIVE VOICE

### COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PASSIVE FORM OF THE VERBS IN BRACKETS

1. Tennis \_\_\_\_\_ on a clay, grass or hard court. (PLAY)
2. In this hospital small injuries \_\_\_\_\_ by assistant doctors. (TREAT)
3. The wheel \_\_\_\_\_ thousands of years ago (INVENT)
4. English \_\_\_\_\_ in many countries all over the world. (SPEAK)
5. India \_\_\_\_\_ independence after the end of World War II (GIVE).
6. The goals \_\_\_\_\_ in the first 15 minutes of the match (SCORE).
7. New medicine for many diseases \_\_\_\_\_ every year. (FIND)
8. America \_\_\_\_\_ by Christopher Columbus in 1492 (DISCOVER)
9. Breakfast \_\_\_\_\_ from 7 a.m. to 10 a.m. (SERVE)
10. The thief \_\_\_\_\_ to the nearest police station. (TAKE)
11. Every day CNN \_\_\_\_\_ by millions of people . (WATCH)
12. Coffee \_\_\_\_\_ to Europe by the Turks (BRING)
13. In Britain, tons of litter \_\_\_\_\_ away every day. (THROW)
14. Many houses \_\_\_\_\_ by the flood last week. (DESTROY)

TURN THESE ACTIVE VOICE SENTENCES INTO PASSIVE VOICE

1. The secretary opens the mail every morning.

The mail \_\_\_\_\_ by the secretary every morning.

2. A gardener waters the flowers.

The flowers \_\_\_\_\_ by a gardener.

3. Jimmy walks the dogs every day.

The dogs \_\_\_\_\_

---

4. Heavy rain causes the flood.

The flood \_\_\_\_\_

---

5. Police officers examined the evidence.

The evidence \_\_\_\_\_

---

6. A famous artist gave an interview to the reporters.
- 

7. A guide took us to your seat

---

8. We announced the results last Friday.

---

9. The new manager has made some changes

---

10. The students have made arrangements for the party.

---

11. They clean the windows every week.

---

12. They invited him to the cinema.

---



# Conditionals

## 36 First, second and zero conditionals

### REMEMBER!

#### First conditional

##### FORM

*if + present simple*

*If it's hot tomorrow,*

or

*future*

*We'll go to the beach*

*future*

*we'll go to the beach.*

*if + present simple*

*if it's hot.*

##### USE

- To talk about what will happen in the future when there is a possibility that the event in the *if*-clause might happen.

#### Second conditional

##### FORM

*if + was/were/past simple*

*If I was rich*

*If Peter got that job*

or

*would/could/might + infinitive*

*I could buy a yacht*

*We'd move to Edinburgh*

*would/could/might + infinitive*

*I could buy a yacht.*

*we'd move to Edinburgh.*

*if + was/were/past simple*

*if I was rich.*

*if Peter got that job.*

##### USE

- To talk about the present when the event in the *if*-clause is not true:  
*I could buy a yacht if I was rich. (I'm not rich.)*
- To talk about the future when the event in the *if*-clause is unlikely to happen:  
*We'd move to Edinburgh if Peter got that job. (I don't think he will get the job.)*

#### Zero conditional

##### FORM

*if + present simple*

*If I go to bed late,*

*If you cook vegetables for too long,*

or

*present simple*

*I always feel tired the next day*

*Vegetables taste awful*

*present simple*

*I always feel tired the next day.*

*they taste awful.*

*if + present simple*

*if I go to bed late.*

*if you cook them for too long.*

##### USE

- To talk about things that always/often/sometimes happen if something else (in the *if*-clause) happens.

## Practice

Write these sentences, putting the verbs in brackets into the correct form and adding **'ll/will**, or **'d/would** if necessary.

- 1 If you give me your phone number, I (call) *'ll call* you.
- 2 I (drive) *'d drive* to work if I had a car.
- 3 If I (lose) ..... my job, I'd go back to university.
- 4 If it (rain) ..... tomorrow, we'll cancel the barbecue.
- 5 Where would you live if you (can) ..... choose?
- 6 If the weather (be) ..... good, we often have lunch outside.
- 7 My mother (worry) ..... about me if I didn't phone her every week.
- 8 If you finish before 5 o'clock, I (come) ..... and pick you up.
- 9 If we (hurry) ....., we'll get to the shops before they close.
- 10 I don't know what she (do) ..... if she couldn't go on working.
- 11 What would you do if he (ask) ..... you to marry him?
- 12 He always (complain) ..... if I'm late.
- 13 If I knew the answer to that question, I (tell) ..... you.
- 14 If you come to the party, you (meet) ..... Jim.
- 15 The students usually work hard if they (have) ..... a test.
- 16 Where will you wait if I (be) ..... delayed?
- 17 If she (speak) ..... more clearly, I could understand her.
- 18 If you (win) ..... a lot of money, what would you do with it?
- 19 If the club (close) ....., where would we go?
- 20 I'll see him at the meeting if he (come) .....

### Conditional Type 1

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb given.

1. If we \_\_\_\_\_, we \_\_\_\_\_ there in time. (HURRY, GET)
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ to the doctor unless the pain \_\_\_\_\_. (NOT GO, INCREASE)
3. If you \_\_\_\_\_ in public places you \_\_\_\_\_ into trouble. (SMOKE, GET)
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ for a picnic tomorrow if the weather \_\_\_\_\_ nice. (GO, STAY)
5. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ you if you \_\_\_\_\_ them the truth. (BELIEVE, TELL)
6. If he \_\_\_\_\_ up, he \_\_\_\_\_ to work on time. (NOT WAKE, NOT GET)
7. If she \_\_\_\_\_ her keys, she \_\_\_\_\_ angry. (LOSE, BE)
8. If the baby \_\_\_\_\_ a boy, I \_\_\_\_\_ him Jonathon. (BE, CALL)
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ an accident if you \_\_\_\_\_ so carelessly. (CAUSE, DRIVE)
10. She \_\_\_\_\_ it if she \_\_\_\_\_ me the truth. (REGRET, NOT TELL)
11. If you \_\_\_\_\_ the house now, you \_\_\_\_\_ late for the

meeting. (NOT LEAVE, BE)

12. Margaret \_\_\_\_\_ to the party unless you \_\_\_\_\_ her. (NOTCOME, INVITE)

13. I \_\_\_\_\_ you with the dishes if you \_\_\_\_\_ tired. (HELP, BE)

14. We \_\_\_\_\_ any tickets for the performance unless we \_\_\_\_\_ them in advance. (NOT GET, BUY)

15. If you \_\_\_\_\_ shouting, I \_\_\_\_\_ to you. (NOT STOP, NOTLISTEN)

16. If the dog \_\_\_\_\_ again, I \_\_\_\_\_ the police. (BARK, NOTIFY)

17. If you \_\_\_\_\_ too much, you \_\_\_\_\_ weight (EAT, NOT LOSE)

18. If it still \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow, I \_\_\_\_\_ to work. (RAIN, NOTGO)

19. Unless she \_\_\_\_\_ the ambulance immediately, her father \_\_\_\_\_ : \_\_\_\_\_ (CALL, DIE)

20. If you \_\_\_\_\_ harder, you \_\_\_\_\_ in your exams. (TRY, SUCCEED)

## Conditional Type 2

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb given.

1. If I \_\_\_\_\_ a car,  
to school. (HAVE, DRIVE)
2. If she \_\_\_\_\_ foreign languages,  
she \_\_\_\_\_ a job more easily. (SPEAK, GET)
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ to a lawyer if I \_\_\_\_\_ you. (GO,  
BE)
4. If I \_\_\_\_\_ the lottery, I  
myself for a new life. (WIN, PREPARE)
5. If I \_\_\_\_\_ a purse on the sidewalk,  
I \_\_\_\_\_ it to the lost and found office. (FIND,  
TAKE)
6. If I \_\_\_\_\_ my own car, I  
to take the bus to work every day. (HAVE, NOT HAVE)
7. Jane \_\_\_\_\_ very happy if  
someone \_\_\_\_\_ her a job. (BE, OFFER)
8. If she \_\_\_\_\_ a mouse, she \_\_\_\_\_. (SEE,  
PANIC)
9. If my dad \_\_\_\_\_ more,  
we \_\_\_\_\_ our holidays abroad. (EARN,  
SPEND)

10. She \_\_\_\_\_ so much if she \_\_\_\_\_ smoking. (NOT COUGH, STOP)
11. If I \_\_\_\_\_ my son a lot of money, he \_\_\_\_\_ all of it. (GIVE, SPEND)
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ to get a better job if I \_\_\_\_\_ a university degree. (TRY, HAVE)
13. If you \_\_\_\_\_ a dangerous animal in the street, what \_\_\_\_\_?  
(SEE, YOU DO)
14. If dad \_\_\_\_\_ harder, he \_\_\_\_\_ to ask his boss for more money. (WORK, NOT HAVE)
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ my friends more often if I \_\_\_\_\_ more free time. (SEE, HAVE)
16. I \_\_\_\_\_ the meat if it \_\_\_\_\_ so salty.  
(EAT, NOT BE)
17. If she \_\_\_\_\_ for more help, I \_\_\_\_\_ her down. (ASK, NOT TURN)
18. If I \_\_\_\_\_ her address, I \_\_\_\_\_ her an invitation. (KNOW, SEND)
19. If he \_\_\_\_\_ afraid of heights he \_\_\_\_\_ by plane. (NOT BE, TRAVEL)

20. I \_\_\_\_\_ more photos if the camera \_\_\_\_\_. (TAKE, WORK)

Zero, First or Second conditionals

- 1) (First conditional) If the children \_\_\_\_\_ (not/eat) soon, they \_\_\_\_\_ (be) grumpy.
- 2) (First conditional) If I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/go) to bed soon, I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) tired in the morning.
- 3) If she \_\_\_\_\_ (have) her laptop with her, she \_\_\_\_\_ (email) me, but she doesn't.
- 4) If she \_\_\_\_\_ (not/go) to the meeting, \_\_\_\_\_ (not/go) either.
- 5) (First conditional) If John \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) too much coffee, he \_\_\_\_\_ (get) ill.
- 6) (First conditional) If she \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the library, she \_\_\_\_\_ (study) more.
- 7) If I \_\_\_\_\_ (wake up) late, I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) always late for work.
- 8) If the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ (give) us lots of homework this weekend, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/be) happy.
- 9) If Lucy \_\_\_\_\_ (have) enough time, she \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) more.
- 10) If I \_\_\_\_\_ (want) a new car, I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) one.

11) If Jake \_\_\_\_\_ (not/speak) good French, he  
\_\_\_\_\_ (not/move) to Paris.

12) If you \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) early, it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) less  
stressful.

13) If children \_\_\_\_\_ (not/eat) well, they  
(not/be) healthy.

14) If you \_\_\_\_\_ (heat) ice, it \_\_\_\_\_ (melt).

15) I \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) good the next day if I \_\_\_\_\_ (go)  
to bed early.

16) My daughter \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) her exams if she  
\_\_\_\_\_ (work) hard.

### Conditional Type 1 or Type 2

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb given.

1. If it rains the roads \_\_\_\_\_ wet. (BE)

2. We would be very pleased if our team \_\_\_\_\_ today.  
(WIN)

3. If Peter \_\_\_\_\_ his money, he would be able to buy a new  
bike. (SAVE)

4. If you \_\_\_\_\_ a bit longer, you can see the new queen.  
(WAIT)



5. If Chris \_\_\_\_\_ soon, we'll start without him. (NOT COME)
6. If I \_\_\_\_\_ so tired, I would go with you to the cinema. (NOT BE)
7. Mike would win the race if he \_\_\_\_\_ more quickly. (RUN)
8. If you come to my place, I \_\_\_\_\_ you my new computer. (SHOW)
9. If Ann bought the new car, she \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money. (PAY)
10. What would you do if your car \_\_\_\_\_ down in the middle of the motorway? (BREAK)
12. If I were you, I \_\_\_\_\_ the yellow dress. (TAKE)
13. If \_\_\_\_\_, you'll miss the bus. (YOU, NOT HURRY)
14. If he \_\_\_\_\_ in England, he would speak English better. (LIVE)
15. We \_\_\_\_\_ take the bus if the weather gets bad. (CAN)
16. If their son \_\_\_\_\_ so much trouble, they

would be here. (NOTMAKE)

17. If I \_\_\_\_\_ more time, I would do it myself. (HAVE)

18. If you keep on smoking, you \_\_\_\_\_ lung cancer  
(GET).

### **CONDITIONALS TYPE 1 AND 2**

1. If he were able to afford it, he \_\_\_\_\_ her a diamond ring.  
(BUY)

2. If it rains this afternoon, we \_\_\_\_\_ out. (NOT GO)

3. If she \_\_\_\_\_ the exam, she won't get the job she has  
applied for. (NOT PASS)

4. If she posted the letter now, they \_\_\_\_\_ it by Tuesday.  
(RECEIVE)

5. If I \_\_\_\_\_ about the dinner I would come earlier. (KNOW)

6. My boss \_\_\_\_\_ angry if John comes to work late again.  
(BE)

7. If my girlfriend left me, I \_\_\_\_\_ miserable. (FEEL)

8. I \_\_\_\_\_ that if I were you. (NOT SAY)

9. If I lost my way I \_\_\_\_\_ to the nearest police station.  
(GO)

10. If I \_\_\_\_\_ a spider in my bathroom I would cry out loud.  
(SEE)

11. The teacher will be very angry if you \_\_\_\_\_ in your homework on time. (NOT HAND)

12. If you \_\_\_\_\_ to learn a lot, you would take this course. (WANT)

13. If you \_\_\_\_\_ quickly you will catch the bus. (RUN) 1

14. I would be very proud if she \_\_\_\_\_ my sister. (BE)

15. I \_\_\_\_\_ to your party if I had time. (COME)

16. If you \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers, they won't survive. (NOT WATER)

17. The beach would be an ideal place for a picnic if it \_\_\_\_\_ so crowded. (NOT BE)

18. If she \_\_\_\_\_ the book carefully, she would understand it. (READ)

19. Be careful! If you touch this wire you \_\_\_\_\_ a shock. (GET)

20. She could win the race if she \_\_\_\_\_.

## Tenses Revision 1

**Complete the following text using the correct tenses: Present Simple, Present Continuous, Past Simple, Past Continuous and Future "Going to"**

### **The Avengers**

In this American superhero film, that 1) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) place in 2012, Loki 2) \_\_\_\_\_ (encounter) the Other, the leader of the Chitauri, an evil group of extraterrestrials. In exchange for getting the Tesseract back, a powerful energy source, the Other 3) \_\_\_\_\_ (promise) Loki an army to conquer Earth. Nick Fury, director of the espionage agency S.H.I.E.L.D. and Agent Maria Hill 3) \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at a research building during an evacuation while Dr. Erik Selvig 4) \_\_\_\_\_ (lead) his research team at the same time, Agent Phil Coulson 5) \_\_\_\_\_ (explain) that the Tesseract 6) \_\_\_\_\_ (radiate) an unusual form of energy when it suddenly 7) \_\_\_\_\_ (activate) and 8) \_\_\_\_\_ (open) a wormhole, allowing Loki to reach the Earth and attack.

Now, some years later, responding to the attack, Fury 9) \_\_\_\_\_ (reactivate) the "Avengers Initiative". Coulson 10) \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) Tony Stark to give him Selvig's research, and Fury 11) \_\_\_\_\_ (approach) Steve Rogers with a mission to recover the Tesseract. What they 12) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/know) is that Barton 13) \_\_\_\_\_ (now/plan) to steal the power the Tesseract needs. At the same time, Loki and his army 14) \_\_\_\_\_ (fight) Rogers, Stark, and Romanoff; however, everything 15) \_\_\_\_\_ (end) when Loki 16) \_\_\_\_\_ (give) up.

In the years to come, S.H.I.E.L.D. 17) \_\_\_\_\_ (develop) weapons to fight against hostile extraterrestrials. The Avengers 18) \_\_\_\_\_ (participate) in the battle against Barton and Loki's who attack the Helicarrier, causing Banner to transform into the Hulk. Loki 19) \_\_\_\_\_ (escape) after killing Coulson and throwing Thor out of the airship. Fury 20) \_\_\_\_\_ (use) Coulson's death to motivate the Avengers to work as a team. Loki 21) \_\_\_\_\_ (use) the Tesseract to try to conquer the world. 22) \_\_\_\_\_ they (succeed)?

## Tenses Revision 2

**Complete the following text using the correct tenses: Present Simple, Present Continuous, Past Simple, Past Continuous and Future "Going to"**

### The Matrix

The Matrix 1) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a science fiction action series. Specifically it 2) \_\_\_\_\_ (belong) to the cyberpunk genre of science fiction. Critics 3) \_\_\_\_\_ (consider) the film innovative because of all the special effects.

The film 4) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) released in 1999 and it 5) \_\_\_\_\_ (win) four Academy Awards. At that time, critics 6) \_\_\_\_\_ (think) of the film as innovative because it 7) \_\_\_\_\_ (implement) lots of special effects and it 8) \_\_\_\_\_ (make) the "bullet time" effect popular, something that many action films 9) \_\_\_\_\_ (adopt) later.

In 1999, my dad 10) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) me to the cinema to see this fabulous movie and something amazing happened: We 11) \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) to enter the place when we suddenly 12) \_\_\_\_\_ (see) Keanu Reeves! He 13) \_\_\_\_\_ (sign) autographs at the door. We 14) \_\_\_\_\_ (not want) to miss this opportunity so we 15) \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) with a picture and an autograph.

Right now, I 16) \_\_\_\_\_ (play) "Enter the Matrix" alone and my brother 17) \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) a beautiful landscape because he 18) \_\_\_\_\_ (not like) video games. Tomorrow I 19) \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) my best friend Tom. He 20) \_\_\_\_\_ (download) a new video game for me.

What about you... 21) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (try) this video game next weekend?

## Framing Questions

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

My family is going to watch the Matrix marathon on Saturday night.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Critics consider the film Matrix innovative because of all the special effects.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

The students learnt the most important elements of the sci-fi genre.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

George Lucas created the character of Darth Vader.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

The term science fiction became popular in the 1920's

6. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Nowadays, many film directors are working on sci-fi movies.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Yes, I did. I wrote a sci-fi story for Creative Writing.

8. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Matt is writing a sci fi novel with his editor.

9. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Stephanie is going to watch a marathon of sci-fi movies tonight.

10. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

No, she doesn't. Claire doesn't like sci-fi movies.

### Tenses Revision 3

**Complete the following text using the correct tenses: Present Simple, Present Continuous, Past Simple, Past Continuous and Future "Going to"**

Harry James Potter 1) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) one of the most famous wizard. His parents, James and Lily Potter 2) \_\_\_\_\_ (die) when he was a baby. Voldemort 3) \_\_\_\_\_ (kill) them when Harry was 1 year and 3 months old. As an orphan, Harry 4) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) to be raised by his Muggle aunt Petunia Dursley. In her care he was protected from Lord Voldemort. While he 5) \_\_\_\_\_ (live) there, he 6) \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) in a closet because the Dursleys 7) \_\_\_\_\_ (not like) him at all. His aunt and uncle 8) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/even/tell) him he was a wizard! While his cousin 9) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a normal life, he 10) \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) his days locked and bored.

Today it 11) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) his eleventh birthday and Harry 12) \_\_\_\_\_ (find) out he is a wizard. Right now, an enormous guy named Hagrid 13) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) him to Hogwarts School of Witchcraft and Wizardry. Harry 14) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/know) he 15) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) already famous there as the "Boy Who Lived." While he 16) \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) to Hogwarts, he 17) \_\_\_\_\_ (make) friends with Ron Weasley and Hermione Granger. During his first week there, Potter and his friends 18) \_\_\_\_\_ (become) part of Gryffindor House.

During the next school year, they 19) \_\_\_\_\_ (protect) the Philosopher's Stone from Voldemort and Harry 20) \_\_\_\_\_ (become) the youngest Quidditch Seeker in over a century and the captain of his Gryffindor's team. He 21) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/learn) how to conjure a corporeal stag Patronus until he becomes thirteen. Harry 22) \_\_\_\_\_ (play) an important role in many other battles of the Second Wizarding War. He, Ron, and Hermione 23) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/hunt) down and destroy Voldemort alone, they 24) \_\_\_\_\_ (get) help from Cedric Diggory and Ron's sister Ginny Weasley.

## FRAMING QUESTIONS

1. \_\_\_\_\_?

Potter and his friends are going to watch the Quidditch game on Saturday afternoon.

2. \_\_\_\_\_?

The Wizardry world know Harry as the "Boy Who Lived" because he survived Voldemort's deadly attack.

3. \_\_\_\_\_?

The students from Hogwarts School learnt the most important spells and charms.

4. \_\_\_\_\_?

J. K. Rowling created the character of Harry Potter

5. \_\_\_\_\_?

Harry Potter was born in July, 1980.

6. \_\_\_\_\_?

Nowadays, Harry and his friends are attending their last school year.

7. \_\_\_\_\_?

Yes, he did. Harry defeated Voldemort.

8. \_\_\_\_\_?

Ron and Hermione are creating a new spell with Professor Gilderoy Lockhart.

9. \_\_\_\_\_?

Gryffindor's members are going to play a Quidditch match this afternoon.

10. \_\_\_\_\_?

No, she doesn't. Hermione doesn't like Ron.





# **GATEWAY A2**

# **RESOURCES**

## What a great party!

Work in pairs. You're a celebrity at a party and you don't know many people. Ask and answer questions to introduce yourselves to other celebrities.

**1A James Band**

You are a famous actor from the USA.

You've got three brothers.

Your grandmother is from China and your father is Japanese.

**Ask B:** *Where / live? How old?*

**1B Justin Bilber**

You are a 54-year-old singer from London. You've got a very big house in California. You've got one sister and she lives in China.

**Ask A:** *you / from China? have got / sister?*

**2A Zendana**

You're 14 years old and you're from Ireland. You're a famous dancer. Your parents are French, but you live in Italy with your aunt.

**Ask B:** *have got / children? age?*

**2B Taylor Shift**

You are Canadian and you're a famous piano player. You're 26 years old. You're married but you haven't got any children.

**Ask A:** *Where / live? Where / parents / from?*

**3A Larry Styles**

You're a singer from Spain, but you live in London. You're 22 years old. You've got a twin brother. He lives in Japan.

**Ask B:** *you / from Australia? have got / a pet?*

**3B Jennifer Loper**

You're an Australian actress and you're 22 years old. You live in London, but you haven't got family there. You've got a small dog.

**Ask A:** *you / Spanish? Where / brother / live?*

**4A Chris Ronald**

You're 19 years old and you're from Canada. You're a football player in London. Your parents are Brazilian. You haven't got brothers or sisters.

**Ask B:** *you / actress? where / from?*

**4B Gemma Watson**

You're from Boston, USA. You're 15 years old and your parents are famous actors. You've got a brother and a sister – younger than you.

**Ask A:** *you / singer? you / from Brazil?*

## A2 Key Part 2

## 1 Read the article in exercise 3 quickly. What are the three paragraphs about?

- a The students' favourite lessons.
- b Different kinds of sports and exercise the students do at school.
- c Things the schools do that are different to other schools.

## 2 Complete the sentences with these words and phrases.

art gallery • do exercise • gym • have lunch  
• listen to music • museum • swimming pool

- 1 Some of the things in the ..... are 3,000 years old!
- 2 It's 12.30 and I'm hungry! Let's .....

## 3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 3 Do you like the picture by Picasso in the .....
- 4 It's hot! Let's go to the ..... and jump in the water!
- 5 In the morning, I always ..... on my phone. Sometimes I sing, too!
- 6 I'm tired. I don't want to ..... today!
- 7 I like running in the park but I go to the ..... when it's raining.

## ✓ Exam tip

In matching activities, first read all the texts or parts of the text quickly to get a general understanding. Then read the information that you need to find.

## New ideas at school

## Anya



Every week, after lunch on Friday, we have a lesson in a museum or art gallery. We learn a different subject each time. Sometimes it's history or art, of course, but it's often something else. We sometimes have English lessons in the art gallery, for example, and we might write a story about a painting. There's a science museum near our school so we often have science lessons there. They're usually much more interesting than normal lessons!

## Dexter



Every morning at nine o'clock, we have to run for 15 minutes. The first time we did it, I didn't like it! I like doing exercise but I never run in my free time. I prefer going to the gym or the swimming pool. But now I like running every morning at school! We don't run fast and it's fun. The teachers run with us and sometimes we listen to music. I always feel better after I run.

## Finley



Everyone likes having lunch at our school! Why? Because the students make the menu! Every day, a different group of students decides what we eat. The same students also help to make the food. Of course, the food has to be healthy! It's good because we learn about healthy food, and we can eat food that we like. Sometimes students have bad ideas and the food isn't nice, but usually it's great! Today is Fish Friday ... Mmm!

- 1 Who can decide what other students have for lunch?
- 2 Who has lessons somewhere different?
- 3 Who does exercise at school every day?
- 4 Who usually has nice, healthy food at school?
- 5 Who likes swimming?
- 6 Who does something interesting every Friday?
- 7 Who does something that makes them feel better every morning?

	Anya	Dexter	Finley
1	A	B	C
2	A	B	C
3	A	B	C
4	A	B	C
5	A	B	C
6	A	B	C
7	A	B	C

## A2 Key Part 1

1 Look at the short texts in exercise 3. Which of these can you see?

- a sign at a shopping centre
- a message from a friend on a mobile phone
- a sign at a library
- a sign at a school
- a sign at a stadium
- a sign at a train station
- an email from a teacher
- a sign at a sports centre
- a message from a parent on a mobile phone

2 Read the sentences and choose the correct alternatives.

- 1 Usually, you need two to four people to do exercise/ play board games.
- 2 You can watch films at a cinema/swimming pool.
- 3 Let's go to the new gym/café! It's got really good coffee and cakes.
- 4 The library/sports centre near my house is a great place to do sport and exercise.
- 5 My friend is very good at watching films /playing computer games. She usually wins.
- 6 I travel to school by train/car. There are usually a lot of people so I can't sit down.

 Exam tip

In three-option multiple choice activities with short texts, remember ...

First, think about what type of text each one is and in which place or context you might see it. This helps you to think about the purpose of the message or information.

3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

1

### After school fun!

Do you want to:

- play board games
- watch films?

Come to the new club: Wednesdays, 4.30 pm

- A Students can play computer games on Wednesday at 4.30 pm.
- B There's a new club after school.
- C You can do exercise in this club.

2

### GREEN PARK SPORTS CENTRE

Sorry, our swimming pool is closed today.  
Our gym and café are open.

- A You can swim today but you can't have a cup of coffee.
- B The sports centre is closed today.
- C You can go to the gym today but you can't swim.

3

Hi Dan, I can't go to the cinema at 7 pm. Can we go later? The Japanese film is at 8.15. 😊 Alex

- A Alex thinks the Japanese film time is too late.
- B Alex wants to go to the cinema after seven o'clock.
- C Dan can't go to the cinema.

4

### Library computers

You can use the library computers to do your homework. If you want to chat online or play computer games, please use the computers in the Yellow Room.



- A You need to go to a different room if you want to chat online.
- B Students must not use the library computers for homework.
- C There are better computers in the Yellow Room.

5

Eva! There's no bus this morning! We have to go to school by bike. I'm getting dressed now. See you in 15 minutes?  
Jessie 😊

- A The bus is 15 minutes late this morning.
- B Eva and Jessie usually go to school by bike.
- C Eva and Jessie can't go to school by bus today.

6

When you go shopping in the city centre, **don't go by car!**  
Go by **train!**  
All trains to the city centre cost **£1 at weekends!**

- A You must pay £1 at the shopping centre if you go by car.
- B You can only go to the city centre by car at the weekend.
- C Train tickets are cheaper on Saturday and Sunday.

**Present simple affirmative and negative; Prepositions of time; Adverbs of frequency; Present simple questions**

**1 Choose the best answer (A or B).**

- 1 We ..... school at 3 pm.  
A finish                      B finishes
- 2 I ..... the piano.  
A don't play                B doesn't play
- 3 They ..... television after dinner.  
A watches                 B watch
- 4 He ..... maths or chemistry.  
A doesn't like              B don't like
- 5 You ..... very early in the morning.  
A get up                     B gets up
- 6 She ..... D&T on Monday afternoon.  
A studys                    B studies

**2 Complete the sentences with in, at or on.**

- 1 My dad usually gets up ..... seven.
- 2 They go to school ..... Saturday mornings.
- 3 I like to walk in the park ..... the afternoon.
- 4 Tom goes to football practice ..... half past six.
- 5 The next concert is ..... 5<sup>th</sup> November.
- 6 She does her homework ..... the weekend.

**3 Write the sentences again with the adverb of frequency given in the correct place.**

- 1 I go home after school. (usually)  
.....
- 2 I play the drums at night. (always)  
.....
- 3 He goes to school by bus. (sometimes)  
.....
- 4 They chat online. (never)  
.....
- 5 Tina goes to the cinema at the weekend. (often)  
.....
- 6 We eat in a fast-food restaurant. (hardly ever)  
.....

**4 Complete the questions with the correct present simple form of the verbs given. Then complete the short answers.**

- 1 A: ..... you ..... computer games? (like)  
B: No, I .....
- 2 A: ..... he ..... to the library by bike? (go)  
B: No, he .....
- 3 A: ..... they ..... to music all the time? (listen)  
B: Yes, they .....
- 4 A: ..... she ..... visiting museums? (enjoy)  
B: Yes, she .....
- 5 A: ..... you ..... breakfast before school? (eat)  
B: Yes, I .....

**5 Complete the text with these words.**

at • gives • spend • Do you like • usually • opens  
take • is • often • doesn't cost • has

The Museo Reina Sofia in Madrid (1) ..... a wonderful museum with a large collection of modern art. It (2) ..... at 10 am every day except Tuesday and it shuts (3) ..... 9 pm. However, the opening hours (4) ..... change on Sundays. It (5) ..... very much to go in. The museum (6) ..... lots of paintings by different artists, including *Guernica* by Picasso and more than 100 works by Dalí. You can walk around on your own or (7) ..... a guided tour. The tours (8) ..... teach people about the artists and their work. The museum also (9) ..... summer workshops for children, where they (10) ..... time with a young artist and develop a project with them. (11) ..... modern art? If the answer is yes, then visit the museum when you get the chance.

## Questions and answers

### 1 Work with a partner. Put the words in order to make questions.

- 1 best Who friend your is
- 2 mother do your does What
- 3 the Do guitar play you
- 4 school do do you What after
- 5 old you are How
- 6 online you chatting Do like
- 7 Do get early you up
- 8 you school get to How do
- 9 Saturday friends you see Do your on
- 10 have do lunch you usually What for
- 11 What your father do Sunday on does
- 12 go usually do you holiday When on
- 13 do Where live you
- 14 football you Do play
- 15 learning do like you English Why
- 16 subjects like school Which you do
- 17 How today you are

Who is your best friend?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

..... ?

### 2 Match the questions in 1 with the answers.

**a** Yes, at six o'clock. But I like to stay in bed late at the weekend.

**b** In a small house near the town centre.

**c** I always do my homework and then have dinner.

**d** Not much. Just a sandwich and some fruit or chocolate.

**e** I always walk. It's only about ten minutes from my house.

**f** She's a chef at a small restaurant near our home.

**g** Yes. We usually watch films or play computer games.

**h** Because it's interesting and I love foreign languages.

**i** Yes, I spend hours on my phone doing this!

**j** In July or August, but we sometimes go away in April.

**k** He usually watches sport on the television.

**l** Suzanne. We do everything together.

**m** Very well, thank you.

**n** My favourites are geography and maths.

**o** No, never, but I love watching it on the television.

**p** Yes, and I sing as well. I want to be a famous singer!

**q** Fifteen. It's my sixteenth birthday next week!

### 3 Write the bold letters from 2 under the correct numbers and find out what your teacher does in the evening!

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17		
I																		!

## True/False

1 Read the text in exercise 3 quickly. In which paragraph can you find the following information? Write the paragraph number (1–3).

- a what Katreina and Trent do in their free time  
Paragraph .....
- b the kind of home the Powers family live in  
Paragraph .....
- c the rooms that the home has  
Paragraph .....

2 Complete the sentences with these words.

attic • bathroom • bedroom • garden • kitchen • living room

- 1 You sleep in your .....
- 2 You brush your teeth and have a shower in the .....
- 3 It's nice to sit in the ..... when the weather is good, but not when it's raining.
- 4 You can sit on the sofa and watch TV with your family in the .....
- 5 The ..... is at the top of the house.
- 6 The ..... is the room where you make dinner.

Exam tip

In True/False activities, you must find the information in the text. Do not answer with your opinion. For this task you should first read the whole text quickly. Then read the True/False sentences. Next, read the parts of the text where you think the answers come. Read slowly and carefully.

3 Read the text and decide if the statements are True (T) or False (F).

- |   |       |
|---|-------|
| 1 Katreina and Trent's home is small.   | T / F |
| 2 The boat has got a dishwasher.  | T / F |
| 3 Katreina and Trent started living on the boat when they were very young children. | T / F |
| 4 The boat has got two bedrooms.  | T / F |
| 5 Katreina and Trent usually have lessons in the afternoon.                         | T / F |
| 6 Katreina and Trent can play computer games on the boat.                           | T / F |



## Teens at sea

Teenagers Katreina and Trent Powers live with their parents in a small home. It's only 12 metres long and 4 metres wide, and it hasn't got a garden. It hasn't got a washing machine, a dishwasher or even a sofa. But the family love their home and don't want to live anywhere else. Why? Because it's a boat! The Powers family have lived on their boat most of the time since 2009, when Katreina was three and Trent was one. They travel around the east coast of the USA and the Caribbean and visit many different places.

Although the boat is smaller than most homes, it's got three bedrooms, two bathrooms, a living room and a kitchen. The kitchen is small but it's got a cooker and a fridge. Living on a boat is challenging and the teenagers have lots of jobs to do. For example, Trent takes the rubbish out and Katreina helps to make dinner.

The boat is not only Katreina and Trent's home; it's also where they go to school. They usually start lessons at 8 am and finish at lunchtime, but that can change. For example, if it's very windy, the boat moves a lot, and then it's very difficult to read or write! After their lessons, they might go swimming and look at fish, or explore an island. They've got a TV and a games console on the boat, so they also watch films and play computer games with their friends, like most teenagers!

4 Read the text again and find words that have these meanings.

- a the area of land next to the sea  
(paragraph 1) .....
- b not easy (paragraph 2) .....
- c having a lot of moving air; not calm (weather)  
(paragraph 3) .....
- d look around a place for the first time  
(paragraph 3) .....

A2 Key Part 4

1 Read the text in exercise 3 quickly. What is the text about?

- a travelling by plane
- b an unusual holiday home
- c some fun things to do on holiday

2 Match these words to the photos.

cooker • lamp • microwave • radiator • sink • toilet



✓ Exam tip

In multiple choice cloze activities, there is a text with gaps. You complete the gaps with one of three words on the page. First read the complete text. Don't stop to think about the gaps. This is to get a general understanding of the text.

3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

## A holiday on a plane

Many people travel by plane when they go on (1) ....., but did you know you can also stay in a plane? In a small village (2) ..... the sea in the west of France, there's an old plane that is now a holiday home. It's got one (3) ..... with a big bed, and there are also two small beds in the living room. There's a small (4) ..... with a fridge, a microwave, a sink and a cooker. The (5) ..... room is the bathroom. It's in the front of the plane and the toilet is where the pilot usually sits. The only (6) ..... with this plane is that you can't fly in it!

- |              |               |             |
|--------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1 A journey  | B holiday     | C trip      |
| 2 A near     | B between     | C under     |
| 3 A garden   | B garage      | C bedroom   |
| 4 A bathroom | B dining room | C kitchen   |
| 5 A best     | B better      | C favourite |
| 6 A bad      | B problem     | C wrong     |



**There is/There are; Prepositions of place; Present simple and present continuous**

**1 Choose the best answer (A, B or C).**

- 1 There ..... three bedrooms in my house.  
A are      B isn't      C is
- 2 There ..... a lamp on my desk.  
A are      B is      C aren't
- 3 There ..... a microwave in the kitchen.  
A are      B isn't      C aren't
- 4 ..... there any computer games we can play?  
A Is      B Are      C Isn't
- 5 There ..... five books here.  
A isn't      B is      C aren't
- 6 ..... there a light in here?  
A Are      B Aren't      C Is

**2 Circle the correct alternative.**

- 1 There's a computer in/on the desk.
- 2 There's an armchair next to/under the bath.
- 3 There are some boxes under/in my bed.
- 4 Their garden is above/in front of the house.
- 5 The bedroom is on/above the kitchen.
- 6 The cat is behind/in the door.
- 7 There isn't a washing machine on/in the house.
- 8 The park is near/on the school.

**3 Find and correct the mistakes in the present continuous form.**

- 1 Jane is writting about pollution problems.
- 2 They are read a leaflet about recycling.
- 3 I playing football in the park with my friends.
- 4 He aren't doing the shopping with Mum.
- 5 We is cooking dinner for the family.
- 6 You isn't studying for the test.

**4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs given.**

- 1 My brothers ..... football at school now. (play)
- 2 Tim usually ..... home from school. (walk)
- 3 We ..... watching films on a Friday evening. (like)
- 4 I ..... my bed now. (make)
- 5 She ..... the ironing. She's taking out the rubbish. (not do)
- 6 They ..... to music. They're watching a film on TV. (not listen)

**5 Choose the best answer (A, B or C).**

- 1 The children ..... outside in the garden.  
A are playing      B is playing      C playing
- 2 The laptop ..... at the moment.  
A aren't working      B isn't working      C are working
- 3 Mum ..... the shopping. She always goes to the shopping centre on Saturday afternoons.  
A isn't doing      B are doing      C is doing
- 4 Jason always ..... his bed in the morning.  
A make      B makes      C is making
- 5 Rachel and Lucy usually ..... the dishes after dinner.  
A washes      B are washing      C wash

**6 Complete the text with these words.**

works • there aren't • isn't working • live  
there are • near • are living • there is • in • near

The Duke and Duchess of Cambridge, also known as William and Kate, (1) ..... at Anmer Hall in Norfolk. It is (2) ..... the Queen's house at Sandringham. (3) ..... ten bedrooms and it is a very big country house. It has a large garden and a swimming pool, and (4) ..... also a tennis court. William and Kate both live (5) ..... the house with their three children, George, Charlotte and Louis. The village of Anmer is very small and (6) ..... any shops to visit, but some of their friends live (7) ..... them in Norfolk. William (8) ..... as a pilot when he (9) ..... for the royal family. They (10) ..... here to give their children a quiet life. However, they also have a flat in Kensington Palace in London.



## A2 Key Part 3

## 1 Read the text in exercise 3 quickly. Find:

- a the name of a place .....
- b a time of the year .....
- c a part of the body .....
- d a word to talk about how you feel .....

## 2 Complete the sentences with these words.

arms • chest • face • feet • legs • stomach

- 1 You wear shoes on your .....
- 2 Your eyes, nose and mouth are on your .....
- 3 Your ..... is below your shoulders and above your stomach.
- 4 Your ..... are between your hands and your shoulders.
- 5 You wear trousers on your .....
- 6 Your ..... is below your chest and above your legs.

Exam tip

After reading the text quickly to get the general idea, read the text again really carefully. Look at each question and compare each option with the text.

## 3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 1 What is special about the place where Kate Macleod lives?
  - A It's always cold.
  - B There are a lot of nice beaches.
  - C Many people swim in the sea there.
- 2 When does Kate swim in the sea?
  - A most of the time, but not in winter
  - B only in winter
  - C in spring, summer, autumn and winter
- 3 How is swimming with a 'mermaid tail' different?
  - A You have to move your body in a different way.
  - B It's easier than other kinds of swimming.
  - C You don't have to move your legs or feet.
- 4 What is Kate famous for?
  - A writing a book
  - B making videos and TV programmes
  - C winning swimming competitions
- 5 According to Kate, why does swimming in the sea make you feel better?
  - A Cold water always makes you feel calm.
  - B If you can swim in cold water, you can do anything.
  - C You don't think about other things when you are in the sea.



## Half woman, half fish

The island of Lewis in the north west of Scotland has many beautiful beaches, with clear, light blue water and white sand. Most people say you can't swim in the sea there because it's too cold. However, a young woman called Kate Macleod disagrees.

Kate loves swimming in the sea around the island all year, even in winter. People say she is like a mermaid – a person from stories who is half woman and half fish. When she swims, she even looks like a mermaid! She has a special 'mermaid tail' which she wears over her feet and her legs. With her 'tail', she can't swim normally, so she swims under the water like a fish – or a mermaid. It's hard to swim like a mermaid but it's fun and you can swim fast. You put your arms in front of your face and move different parts of your body down and then up: first your chest, then your stomach, your legs and your feet.

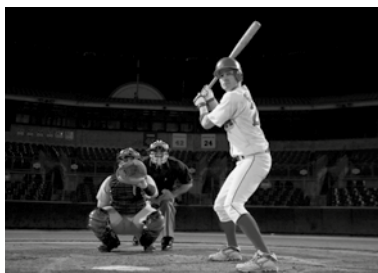
Kate makes videos about swimming on her island, and she's famous on social media. She has also made TV programmes about the sea and the islands near her home. She thinks more people should try swimming outside in cold water because it can help you feel happy and calm. 'When you go into the sea you don't think about anything else,' she says. Of course, you don't have to wear a mermaid tail!

## A2 Key Part 5

1 Read the email in exercise 3 quickly. Which of these does Dylan NOT do in the email?

- a ask Zara about her favourite sport
- b tell Zara about a sport he likes
- c ask Zara if she wants to do a sport with him

2 Look at the photos then write the missing letters to complete the sports.



1 b ..... eb ..... l



2 ..... li ..... bi ..... g



3 b ..... k ..... b ..... l



4 ..... o ..... le ..... b ..... ll



5 s ..... r ..... i .....



6 ..... en ..... i .....

Exam tip

First read the passage quickly to get an idea of its topic and general meaning. Then read each sentence with a gap carefully and think about what type of word is needed. Consider which word makes sense in each one.

3 For each question, write the correct answer. Write one word for each gap.

**From:** dylan@friendsmail.com

**To:** zara@friendsmail.com

How **(1)** ..... you?

Guess what? I've **(2)** ..... a new favourite sport: climbing! There's **(3)** ..... climbing wall at the sports centre near my house and I go there often. Sometimes when I go there, I **(4)** ..... basketball or tennis, but I prefer climbing. It's fun, **(5)** ..... it's hard. You need strong arms and legs, and a strong back – even strong fingers!

**(6)** ..... you want to try climbing with me next time you visit? You don't have to pay anything **(7)** ..... I'm in the climbing club. You'll love it! ☺

**can/can't; Adverbs of manner; have to/don't have to, must/mustn't**

**1 Complete the sentences with can (✓) or can't (✗) and the verbs given.**

- 1 My brother ..... very fast. (✓) (run)
- 2 They ..... very well. (✗) (dive)
- 3 I ..... up until 11 pm at the weekend. (✓) (stay)
- 4 Anna ..... 1,500 metres easily. (✓) (swim)
- 5 We ..... TV before we've done our homework. (✗) (watch)
- 6 You ..... very high. (✓) (jump)

**2 Circle the correct alternative.**

- 1 My parents wait patiently/slowly for me to finish my training session.
- 2 You have to train hard/hardly to become a good tennis player.
- 3 I climb very good/carefully because I don't want to fall.
- 4 He runs slow/slowly so I always run in front of him.
- 5 The team are playing badly/bad today.
- 6 They don't play golf good/well, but they enjoy it.

**3 Complete the sentences about the rules of volleyball with must or mustn't and the verbs given.**

- 1 Players ..... the ball. (kick)
- 2 Players ..... the ball to a team member or over the net. (hit)
- 3 The ball ..... inside the lines on the court. (stay)
- 4 The ball ..... the court before a player hits it over the net. (touch)

**4 Find and correct the mistakes.**

- 1 Divers has to train hard to dive well.
- 2 Cliff-divers don't has to wear special swimsuits.
- 3 Divers have be good swimmers.
- 4 A professional diver have to prepare their dives carefully.

**5 Complete the text with the correct form of have to/don't have to or must/mustn't and these verbs.**

do • continue • pass • wear • follow • use • come

**Using the gym**

You (1) ..... suitable clothes and you (2) ..... the correct equipment. You (3) ..... your teacher's instructions. You (4) ..... doing exercise if you feel sick. Children under 16 (5) ..... a test before they can swim in the pool on their own. You (6) ..... a lot of exercise, just do what is comfortable for you. You (7) ..... to the gym every day, just come when you can.

**6 Choose the best answer (A or B).**

Taekwondo is a Korean martial art and an Olympic sport. Competitors (1) ..... fit and flexible. People who practise taekwondo (2) ..... to wear a uniform and a belt. The colour of the belt depends on the level of the competitor. When people compete they (3) ..... shoes. Competitors (4) ..... kick or punch their opponent. They (5) ..... make body contact with their opponent to win points. They have to move (6) ..... and concentrate (7) ..... (8) ..... you do taekwondo? I can punch (9) ....., but I (10) ..... very high. My teacher says I (11) ..... and that I (12) ..... more.

- |                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 A have be            | B must be            |
| 2 A have               | B can't              |
| 3 A must to wear       | B don't have to wear |
| 4 A can                | B mustn't to         |
| 5 A mustn't            | B must               |
| 6 A fast               | B faster             |
| 7 A hard               | B good               |
| 8 A Must               | B Can                |
| 9 A good               | B well               |
| 10 A can kick          | B can't kick         |
| 11 A must be patiently | B must be patient    |
| 12 A must practise     | B can't practise     |

Signs and notices

Choose a sign for your partner. They have three minutes to throw the die and move their counter to the three sentence parts that match the sign.



... on this door before entering.

You must ...

... careful when you walk here.

You don't have to ...

... wear ...

... change ...

... ride ...

You can ...

You mustn't ...

You can ...

You don't have to ...

You can ...

You mustn't ...

... a taxi here.

... a table at this restaurant.

... slowly along the road.

... ask ...

... park ...

... your litter in the bin.

You don't have to ...

... book ...

... money here.

... pay ...

...for information here

... use ...

You don't have to ...

... quiet in this room.

... get ...

You mustn't...

... your mobile here.

You must ...

You must ...

... use ...

... be ...

... knock ...

... the Internet here.

... drive ...

... put ...

... your car here.

... to park your car here.

You must ...

... your bicycle on this street

You can...

... a school uniform tonight.

... be ...

... smoke ...

**START**

Open comprehension

1 Read the text in exercise 3 quickly and match the questions and answers.

- |   |  |          |
|---|--|----------|
| a | What country is Puerto Nariño in?                    | Peru     |
| b | How many boats go to Puerto Nariño every day?        | 3        |
| c | How many hours does the boat take?                   | Colombia |
| d | What's the other country you can see from the river? | 10       |
| e | How far is Tarapoto lake from the village (in km)?   | 2        |

2 Complete the sentences with these words.

boat • excursion • flight • package holiday • plane • sightseeing • tour guide • train

- I don't like rivers or the sea, so I never travel by .....
- She always takes a lot of photos when she goes .....
- He's a really good ..... – he knows a lot and he tells funny stories!
- If you're travelling by ....., go to the airport early so you are not late for your .....
- I don't travel by ..... often because there isn't a station in my town.
- You can go on a ..... if you don't want to book everything yourself.
- The ..... to the lake takes about six hours and we travel there by bus.

Exam tip

In open comprehension reading activities, you have to write an answer in your own words. You can use some of the same words as the text, but the whole sentence should not be the same. Think about different ways to write the same thing.

3 Answer the following questions in your own words according to the information given in the text. Do not copy from the text.

- How is Puerto Nariño different from other villages?  
.....
- How did the writer travel from Bogotá to Puerto Nariño?  
.....
- What's one place you can visit near Puerto Nariño? What can you do there?  
.....
- Does the writer like Puerto Nariño? Why / Why not?  
.....

A GREEN VILLAGE IN THE AMAZON

Hello from Puerto Nariño, Colombia! Puerto Nariño is a really special, eco-friendly village in the Amazon rainforest. There are no cars or buses here so you have to walk. The streets are very clean and you have to pay if you leave litter. People use rainwater to wash, and there is no electricity after midnight. Recycling is important here, and people make things from old plastic bottles, for example.



It isn't easy to get here. First, you have to get to the small city of Leticia. Usually, I like to travel by bus or by train but there aren't any roads to Leticia. You have to travel by boat or by plane. I took a flight from the Colombian capital, Bogotá. Then you have to get a boat from Leticia to Puerto Nariño. There are three boats a day and it takes about two hours. It's exciting travelling along the Amazon river, with Peru on the left and Colombia on the right.

In Puerto Nariño there aren't lots of places to go sightseeing, but you can go on a really cool excursion to Tarapoto Lake. It's about 10km from the village. You can see pink dolphins and it's also a good place to swim. We went with a tour guide who showed us lots of birds and animals.

Puerto Nariño is a beautiful place with really friendly people. However, it's very hot, there aren't a lot of different activities, and it's not the kind of place you go on a package holiday. But I love it!



4 Read the text again and find words that have these meanings.

- good for the environment (paragraph 1) .....
- rubbish that people throw in the street, etc. (paragraph 1) .....
- changing paper, bottles, etc. so they can be used again (paragraph 1) .....
- Large, intelligent animals that live in the sea and some rivers, and often jump out of the water. (paragraph 3) .....

A2 Key Part 1

1 Look at the short texts in exercise 3. Which text(s) (1–6) is/are ...

- a about something that happened yesterday? .....
- b about something you must do? .....
- c about something you might want to book? .....
- d about something that happened today? .....

2 Look at the photos then put the letters in order to make travel and transport words.



x tia



u g e g a l g



u t r o g e d i u



r i n a t



c e t i k t



i e g s h t s g e i n

**Exam tip**

First, read the six short texts carefully and decide what each text is about. For example, if it is an instruction, what must you do, or not do? If it is an advertisement, what do the advertisers want you to buy or do?


3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

1 **Buy tickets here**  
 You must buy a ticket before you get on the train. You can't buy tickets on the train.


- A You can buy a ticket after you get on the train.
- B If you booked your ticket online you can get it here.
- C You have to buy a ticket first and then you can get on the train.

2 **New excursion!**  
 Sightseeing by boat, with our tour guide Helen. We stop at Blackrock Castle and visit a beautiful beach. Price: £20, including castle ticket.

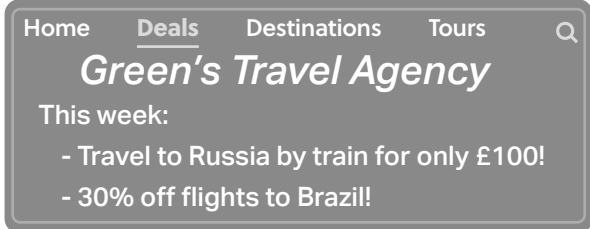
- A You have to pay more if you want to visit the castle.
- B You can visit a beach and a castle by boat.
- C It costs £20 to visit the castle.

3 All passengers must show passports and tickets here. Then take your luggage to Desk C. 

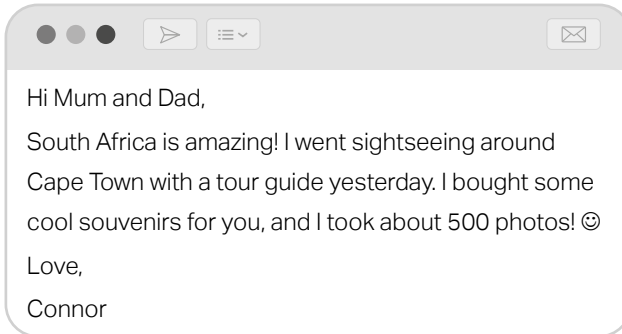
- A Somebody looks at your luggage here.
- B You must show your passport and ticket at Desk C.
- C You can go to Desk C after you show your passport and ticket.

4   
 Hi Billy,  
 My flight was late and I'm very tired! I didn't get the bus from the airport. I'm in a taxi now. See you soon!  
 Kate

- A Kate is travelling from the airport by taxi.
- B The airport bus was late.
- C The bus doesn't go to the airport.

5   
 Home Deals Destinations Tours  
**Green's Travel Agency**  
 This week:  
 - Travel to Russia by train for only £100!  
 - 30% off flights to Brazil!

- A Green's Travel Agency has cheap flights to Russia and Brazil.
- B Some flights and train tickets are cheaper this week.
- C You can get 30% off train tickets here.

6   
 Hi Mum and Dad,  
 South Africa is amazing! I went sightseeing around Cape Town with a tour guide yesterday. I bought some cool souvenirs for you, and I took about 500 photos! ☺  
 Love,  
 Connor

- A Connor's parents bought him some souvenirs.
- B Connor took a lot of photos in Cape Town.
- C Connor arrived in Cape Town today.



**Past simple of *to be*; *There was/There were*; Past simple of *can*; Past simple: affirmative, negative and questions**

**1 Choose the best answer (A or B).**

- 1 Jack ..... on holiday in Mexico last week.  
A was                      B were
- 2 They ..... at the cinema last night. They saw the new Bond film.  
A were                      B was
- 3 There ..... a lot of people on the plane.  
A wasn't                      B weren't
- 4 There ..... a souvenir shop next to our hotel.  
A were                      B was
- 5 Where ..... you on Saturday?  
A were                      B was
- 6 When ..... his exam?  
A were                      B was

**2 Complete the sentences with *could/couldn't* and the verbs given.**

- 1 When I was six I ..... Italian, but I can now. (speak)
- 2 My grandmother ..... emails when she was young because there wasn't the Internet! (send)
- 3 They ..... lots of cheap souvenirs, including shortbread. (buy)
- 4 Freddie ..... his tickets online, so we can do the same. (reserve)
- 5 We ..... our passports, so we missed our flight. (find)

**3 Put the words in order to make sentences. Put the verbs in the past simple affirmative.**

- 1 eat / we / some / food / delicious  
.....
- 2 they / catch / the beach / the train / to  
.....
- 3 in Australia / spent / I / three weeks / last year  
.....
- 4 want / she / temple / the ancient / to see  
.....

**4 Circle the correct alternative.**

- 1 We don't/didn't book a ticket yesterday because we were busy.
- 2 My parents weren't/didn't happy when they lost their luggage.
- 3 Elsie didn't went/go sightseeing because she was tired.
- 4 I wasn't/didn't on the bus at 11 o'clock.
- 5 Oliver didn't buy/bought a souvenir because they were too expensive.
- 6 We weren't/didn't take a taxi because the underground was faster.

**5 Find and correct the mistakes.**

- 1 Do you visit France a month ago?  
.....
- 2 She was in Greece last year?  
.....
- 3 Did Alex remembered to bring his passport?  
.....
- 4 Were there a tour guide at the castle?  
.....
- 5 We did go there three years ago?  
.....
- 6 Was they tired after the flight?  
.....

**6 Complete the text with the correct form of these verbs.**

be • fly • visit • buy • go • travel • can • arrive  
take • try • eat • go • not take • speak • be

A: (1) ..... on holiday last year?  
 B: Yes, we did. We (2) ..... to Moscow for a long weekend in September. We (3) ..... early on Friday morning and it (4) ..... a wonderful trip. We (5) ..... to the city and then (6) ..... by train and metro. We (7) ..... taxis at all. The Moscow metro is very good and the stations are beautiful. We (8) ..... a bus trip around the city. We (9) ..... Red Square and the Kremlin. There (10) ..... quite a lot of tourists! We (11) ..... Russian food, which was delicious, and we (12) ..... some souvenirs.  
 A: (13) ..... any Russian?  
 B: We (14) ..... to speak a few words of Russian, but lots of Russians spoke English well, so we (15) ..... communicate easily.

## A2 Key Part 2

1 Read the three texts in exercise 3 quickly. Who talks about ...

- a sport? **Erin / Noah / Holly**  
 b music? **Erin / Noah / Holly**  
 c films? **Erin / Noah / Holly**

2 Complete the words for jobs.

- 1 A s ..... sings songs.  
 2 An a ..... writes books.  
 3 An a ..... acts in films, plays or on TV.  
 4 A m ..... p ..... makes and records music.

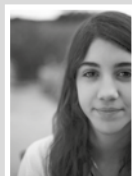
3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 5 A d ..... tells actors what to do.  
 6 An a ..... is very good at a sport.

 Exam tip

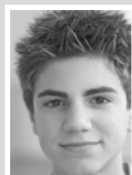
After reading the texts quickly, look at the questions. Look for important words that help you to find the text or part of the text which contains the information you need. Read that specific text or part of the text again slowly and carefully. If you are not sure that you have found the correct answer, read other parts of the text again in more detail.

## A person I admire



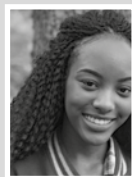
### Erin

I want to be a film director and I love Greta Gerwig's films. She's been an actor for more than 15 years, but she's more famous as a director now. The first two films she directed were *Lady Bird* and *Little Women* and they were both fantastic. The film review website *Rotten Tomatoes* gives *Lady Bird* 99% and *Little Women* 95%. That's amazing for a young director's first two films! I love these films because they are both about teenage girls, like me.



### Noah

My hero is an athlete called Fauja Singh. In 2011, he became the oldest person to run a marathon (42 km), when he was 100! He's got an amazing story. An author called Simran Jeet Singh wrote a children's book about him in 2020. My little sister has got the book and she told me about him. I wasn't good at sport, but his story made me want to run. Now I can run 10 km and I want to run a marathon soon.



### Holly

I think MNEK is amazing! He's a singer, writer and music producer. One day I was listening to the radio when I heard this song. I loved it – it made me feel happy. I found out that it was *Head & Heart* by Joel Corry and MNEK. Then the same day I was watching TV when I saw MNEK on my favourite TV show, teaching people to sing. Oh, and he can dance too! He's brilliant.

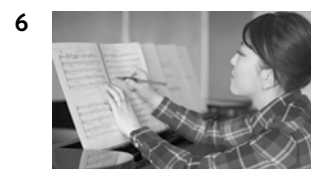
- |  | Erin     | Noah     | Holly    |
|--|----------|----------|----------|
| 1 Who talks about a person who is in a children's book?      | <b>A</b> | <b>B</b> | <b>C</b> |
| 2 Who talks about a job they want to do when they are older? | <b>A</b> | <b>B</b> | <b>C</b> |
| 3 Who talks about something they can do now?                 | <b>A</b> | <b>B</b> | <b>C</b> |
| 4 Who talks about a person who has three different jobs?     | <b>A</b> | <b>B</b> | <b>C</b> |
| 5 Who likes stories about people their age?                  | <b>A</b> | <b>B</b> | <b>C</b> |
| 6 Who talks about a television programme?                    | <b>A</b> | <b>B</b> | <b>C</b> |
| 7 Who learnt something from a person in their family?        | <b>A</b> | <b>B</b> | <b>C</b> |

A2 Key Part 4

1 Read the text in exercise 3 quickly. Underline the names of four people in the text. Who is the text about? What is her job?

2 Match these words to the photos.

composer • conductor • dancer • painter • poet • singer



**Exam tip**

After reading the text quickly, look at the gaps. Carefully read the whole sentence with the gap and look at the words before and after it. They can help you to decide which of the three options is the correct word to complete it.

3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

**A poet becomes a star**



Joe Biden **(1)** ..... the 46<sup>th</sup> president of the United States of America on 20<sup>th</sup> January 2021, but it was also a very important day in the life of the young poet Amanda Gorman. Millions of people around the world were **(2)** ..... on television when the 22-year-old read her poem, *The Hill We Climb*. Even though two very **(3)** ..... singers, Lady Gaga and Jennifer Lopez, sang at the event, most people agreed that Gorman was the star that day. Suddenly, everybody was **(4)** ..... about her, and she got more than 300,000 new Twitter followers in a few hours. In May 2021 she was the **(5)** ..... poet to be on the front cover of *Vogue* magazine. 'My life **(6)** ..... in six minutes,' she said.

- |                |           |           |
|----------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 A started    | B became  | C began   |
| 2 A watching   | B looking | C seeing  |
| 3 A favourite  | B famous  | C best    |
| 4 A discussing | B knowing | C talking |
| 5 A early      | B first   | C new     |
| 6 A opened     | B moved   | C changed |

**Past continuous; Past simple and past continuous**

**1 Complete the sentences with the past continuous form of the verbs given.**

- 1 He wrote the bestseller while he ..... in Italy. (stay)
- 2 They ..... still ..... loudly when the lights came on. (clap)
- 3 I ..... the ballet when my phone rang. I was so embarrassed. (watch)
- 4 They ..... literature at university when they met the author. (study)
- 5 She ..... as an actress when she met the director. (not work)

**2 Circle the correct alternative.**

It was eight o' clock and we (1) watching/ were watching a film on TV. My sister (2) was/were talking but I (3) didn't/wasn't listening to her. My brother (4) wasn't/weren't watching the film. He was (5) looked/looking at his phone. In the film, an astronaut and a scientist (6) was/were trying to fight some aliens. My dad came in and turned the TV off. 'Hey!' we all shouted. 'Oh, sorry. (7) You were/Were you watching that?' he said. My dad is so annoying sometimes!

**3 Circle the correct alternative. If when or while are both possible, circle both.**

- 1 The shop assistant was talking to a customer when/ while a police officer entered the shop.
- 2 I started to feel ill when/while I was waiting to see the dentist.
- 3 They were visiting an art exhibition when/while they saw a famous actor.
- 4 Were you listening to classical music when/while I came to your house?
- 5 Did you see all the firefighters when/while you were walking to school?

**4 Find and correct the mistakes in the past simple or past continuous.**

- 1 They didn't talk while they watching the film.  
.....
- 2 My dad was working as a journalist when he was meeting my mum.  
.....
- 3 I saw my favourite singer while I was walked to the shop.  
.....
- 4 When Sally were studying to be a vet, she got a job at the zoo.  
.....

- 5 While we were eating our dinner in the restaurant, the chef was coming to our table.  
.....

**5 Complete the sentences with the past simple or past continuous form of these verbs.**

jump • say • travel • work • walk

- 1 The composer ..... by train when she had an idea for some new music.
- 2 The last time I saw him, the vet ..... I should give my dog different food.
- 3 Both actors ..... in the theatre when they met the famous film director.
- 4 While the firefighter was climbing the tree, the cat ..... down.
- 5 It was a cold day and the police officers ..... up and down to keep warm.

**6 Choose the best answers (A, B or C).**

I (1) ..... to the theatre last night. It was very good. The actress who (2) ..... Lady Macbeth was amazing. But while she (3) ..... a big speech, someone's phone (4) ..... . It was awful! We (5) ..... dinner after the show in a restaurant near the theatre. While we (6) ..... , we (7) ..... some of the actors from the play. They (8) ..... dinner and talking. I (9) ..... for a photo – they (10) ..... , they (11) ..... and I didn't want to interrupt them.

- |                     |                 |                   |
|---------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1 A went            | B was going     | C was go          |
| 2 A was playing     | B were playing  | C played          |
| 3 A gave            | B was giving    | C were giving     |
| 4 A rang            | B were ringing  | C was ringing     |
| 5 A were having     | B was having    | C had             |
| 6 A were eating     | B was eating    | C ate             |
| 7 A were seeing     | B was seeing    | C saw             |
| 8 A was having      | B had           | C were having     |
| 9 A wasn't asking   | B didn't ask    | C weren't asking  |
| 10 A wasn't working | B didn't work   | C weren't working |
| 11 A relaxed        | B were relaxing | C was relaxing    |

## My dog saved me!

1 Look at the photo of Ed and discuss the questions with a partner.



- 1 Where was Ed on Sunday? Who was he with? What was he doing?
- 2 What do you think happened to him?

2 Complete the first part of story. Use the past simple and the past continuous.

It was a hot sunny day in July. I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (wake up) early and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) to the lake with my dog, Rusty. I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (put on) my life jacket and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (get) in my small boat with Rusty and my fishing rod. Five minutes later, I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (fish) in the middle of the lake. While I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (hold) my fishing rod, something (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (start) to pull on it. It was something very big and strong. It was difficult to hold my fishing rod. Rusty (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (move) around in the boat and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a lot of noise. I (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (think) 'I'm going to fall into the water!'

3 What do you think happened next? Discuss in small groups.

4 Complete the rest of the story. Use the past simple and the past continuous.

While I (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to pull out the fish, Rusty (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (jump) in the water. 'Rusty!' I (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (shout) again and again, but he (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (not come) out of the water. While I (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for Rusty, the fish (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) pulling on my fishing rod. Then I (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (see) Rusty's head on the surface of the water. He (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (swim) towards the boat with a big boot in his mouth. 'That's a strange fish! Good boy, Rusty!' I (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (say) and (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (lift) him onto the boat.




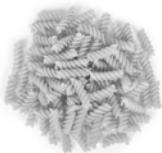


5 Think of a title for Ed's story. Compare your titles in class.

True/False

1 Look at the photos and the title of the text in exercise 3 and answer the questions. Then read the text quickly and check your ideas.

- 1 What kind of text is it?
  - a an email
  - b a magazine article
  - c a blog
- 2 What do you think it is about?
  - a looking for food in nature
  - b growing vegetables
  - c supermarket food

2 Look at the photos then write the missing letters to complete the words.

<p>1 </p> <p>..... a ..... e.....</p>	<p>2 </p> <p>..... i.....</p>
<p>3 </p> <p>..... a.....</p>	<p>4 </p> <p>..... a ..... a</p>
<p>5 </p> <p>..... ou.....</p>	<p>6 </p> <p>..... o ..... i.....</p>

**Exam tip**

Before you read a text, look at the title and any pictures or paragraph headings. Imagine what the text is about and think about any knowledge and vocabulary you already know on the topic. This helps you to understand the text when you read.

3 Read the text and decide if the statements are True (T) or False (F).

## Charlie cooks and eats

POSTS ABOUT ME CONTACT



Hi! I'm Charlie.

### Finding dinner

If you read this blog often, you'll know that I love cooking. At the moment, I'm thinking a lot about where the food I cook comes from. Usually, I cook with a lot of things that come from a packet, a jar or a tin in the supermarket. I'd like to cook with more fresh, interesting food, but that can be expensive.

That's why I'm learning about foraging, which means looking for food that grows in nature. This has become more popular recently because it's more environmentally friendly than buying food in a supermarket, and it's fun, too!

René Redzepi is a famous chef at one of the world's best restaurants, Noma in Copenhagen. He loves foraging and wants to teach young people how to find food in nature. He helped to make a website and an app called 'Vild Mad', which means 'Wild Food' in his language, Danish. (The website and app are in English too.)

I've got the app and it's really helpful. There are pictures of all the different plants to help you find them. There's also a lot of information about how to cook with them and there are some really good recipes too. My favourite recipes from this app are a soft drink you make with flowers, a delicious green soup, and pasta with seaweed (plants from the sea).

I made these recipes for my friends and family, and they loved them. Now when I want to cook something interesting, I don't go to the supermarket – I go for a walk in the countryside!



- |  |       |
|--|-------|
| 1 Charlie only cooks with fresh food.                        | T / F |
| 2 Charlie explains what foraging is.                         | T / F |
| 3 Charlie writes about a visit to René Redzepi's restaurant. | T / F |
| 4 Charlie uses an app to find food in nature.                | T / F |
| 5 Charlie writes about a green soft drink he made.           | T / F |
| 6 Charlie's family enjoyed the soft drink, soup and pasta.   | T / F |

4 Read the text again and find words that have these meanings.

- a website with short articles called posts, usually about someone's life or interests (paragraph 1)
- b not a long time ago (paragraph 2)
- c useful (paragraph 4)
- d a list of foods and instructions for making a dish (paragraph 4)

A2 Key Part 5

1 When you have to fill in the missing words in a text, what should you do if you don't know what goes in the gap?

- a Write the words you know first and go back to the other gaps later.
- b Don't write anything in the gap.
- c Write any word you know on the same topic as the text.

2 Look at the photos and choose the correct alternatives.

1



- a mushrooms
- b beans
- c garlic

2



- a chicken
- b fish
- c sausage

3



- a rice
- b lentils
- c grapes

4



- a curry
- b salad
- c pasta

5



- a lettuce
- b cabbage
- c broccoli

6



- a pancakes
- b burgers
- c pizzas

**Exam tip**

Look at the gaps and think about which word makes sense in each one. Write the words you are sure about first, and then go back to the others. When you have completed all the gaps, read the whole text to check it makes sense. Check that your spelling is correct, or you will lose marks.

3 For each question, write the correct answer. Write one word for each gap.

**From:** daisy@friendsmail.com

**To:** lewis@friendsmail.com

I've **(1)** ..... a great idea for the school holidays! **(2)** ..... you want to do cooking lessons? There **(3)** ..... classes at the café in the art gallery and they look really interesting. You learn how to cook lots of different kinds of food from around **(4)** ..... world: curries from India and South Africa, fish dishes from Japan and Peru, pancakes from China and Poland ... Mmm! **(5)** ..... course, you can eat the food after the lesson!

I don't know how **(6)** ..... the lessons cost yet, but I don't think they're expensive.

**(7)** ..... do you think?

## Up and down

Take turns to roll the die and move your counter up or down. Complete each sentence you land on with *a, an, some, any, much, many* or *a lot of*.

<b>10</b>	How ..... bananas do you eat in a week?			Is there ..... meat in this dish? I don't eat meat.	<b>10</b>
<b>9</b>	There are ..... strawberries in the garden. We can't eat all of them.			I usually only have ..... sandwich for lunch.	<b>9</b>
<b>8</b>	There aren't ..... eggs in the fridge. Where are they?			I can't find ..... rice in your kitchen. Where do you keep it?	<b>8</b>
<b>7</b>	Would you like ..... apple?			There isn't ..... sugar. Just enough for one cup of coffee.	<b>7</b>
<b>6</b>	How ..... fruit do you eat in a week?			There's ..... butter in the fridge, but we need more to make a cake.	<b>6</b>
<b>5</b>	There are ..... cans of lemonade in my bag. Would you like one?			I drink ..... orange juice – at least a carton a day. I love it!	<b>5</b>
<b>4</b>	There isn't ..... water in this bottle. It's empty.			I've got ..... pizza and chips. Do you want to stay for dinner?	<b>4</b>
<b>3</b>	I'd like ..... burger, please.			Can you pass me ..... egg, please? I need one for this recipe.	<b>3</b>
<b>2</b>	Have you got ..... ice cream? Can I have some?			We haven't got ..... biscuits, but we've got some cake.	<b>2</b>
<b>1</b>	We've got ..... bread and cheese for lunch.			There aren't ..... grapes, but we have enough for a fruit salad.	<b>1</b>

↑ **START** ↑  
Student 1

↑ **START** ↑  
Student 2



## A2 Key Part 3

- 1 In multiple choice (A, B or C) reading questions, what should you do?
- Only write an answer if you are sure it is right.
  - Read the text slowly before you look at the questions.
  - Cross out answer options (A, B or C) if you are sure they are wrong.

## 2 Look at the photos and complete the sentences with the correct form of wild animal words.



There are around 3,000 ..... in India.



The biggest ..... are 4 metres long!



..... kill more people than sharks!



There are eight different kinds of .....



..... are good at climbing and often sleep in trees.

 Exam tip

In exams, always answer all the questions. You do not lose marks for incorrect answers. In multiple-choice activities, cross out any answers which you know are incorrect.

## 3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

## Apps to save animals

The world has lost half of its wildlife in the last 40 years, and things will get worse unless we make big changes. Scientists predict that almost 90% of all animals will lose some of their habitat – for example, forests – by 2050.



Many people around the world are trying to find ways to save wildlife before it is too late. One company had an unusual idea: saving wildlife by making apps. One of the company's apps lets you take a selfie with a bear, a rhino and other animals, using Augmented Reality (AR). It looks like the animal is really there in your photo, but of course it isn't! Another app challenges you to run further than a real snow leopard or a tiger. You can read stories about what the animal is doing and where it is going. There's also a game that shows you some of the things scientists are doing to save wildlife. In this game you are a scientist finding out about wild animals in forests in South-East Asia. You can look at hundreds of wildlife photos that real scientists took there and learn about the scientists' work.

Gautam Shah, who started the company, believes that we will only be able to save our planet's animals if enough young people want to make big changes. He wants to make young people – and older people – interested in wildlife through his company's fun apps. 2,100,000,000 people around the world play games on their mobile phones. If all these people are also interested in wildlife, maybe they can change the world.

- How much of its wildlife has the world lost in the last 40 years?
  - 25%
  - 50%
  - 90%
- In paragraph 1, the word *habitat* is closest in meaning to .....
  - home
  - food
  - family
- What can you do with the first app mentioned in the text?
  - see videos of rhinos
  - learn about bears
  - take photos
- Who took the wildlife photos in South-East Asia that you can see in the game?
  - Gautam Shah
  - young people
  - scientists
- What does Gautam Shah want to do?
  - make more people interested in wildlife
  - stop young people playing games on their mobile phones
  - become a scientist

## A2 Key Part 4

1 Look at the photo and the title of the text in exercise 3 and guess the answers to these questions. Then read the text quickly and check your ideas.

- |                                    |       |
|------------------------------------|-------|
| a It's a famous waterfall.         | T / F |
| b There aren't many animals there. | T / F |
| c There's a forest there.          | T / F |
| d It's in Brazil and Argentina.    | T / F |

2 Look at the words in each group. Which is the odd one out?

- |          |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 snake  | monkey    | beach     | penguin   |
| 2 river  | fog       | mountain  | valley    |
| 3 owl    | lizard    | jellyfish | forest    |
| 4 plants | butterfly | flowers   | grass     |
| 5 wind   | storm     | cloud     | waterfall |

Exam tip

Before you read a text, look at the title and any pictures or paragraph headings. Imagine what the text is about and think about any knowledge and vocabulary you already have on the topic. This helps you to understand the text when you read.

3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

## Iguazú Falls

On the Iguazú River **(1)** ..... Brazil and Argentina, there's a famous waterfall that is almost 3 km wide. It's actually almost 300 waterfalls in one place, and they're **(2)** ..... the Iguazú Falls. Around the waterfalls there's a large forest with **(3)** ..... than 2,000 different kinds of plants, 400 kinds of birds, many different insects and more than 80 other kinds of animals. Most **(4)** ..... to Iguazú Falls see an animal called a coati. This animal is about the same **(5)** ..... as a cat, with a long nose and a long tail. There are also monkeys and many beautiful butterflies. The waterfalls are amazing, but visitors should remember to **(6)** ..... at the wildlife too!



- |                |            |           |
|----------------|------------|-----------|
| 1 A under      | B over     | C between |
| 2 A called     | B said     | C told    |
| 3 A bigger     | B better   | C more    |
| 4 A passengers | B visitors | C people  |
| 5 A size       | B body     | C thing   |
| 6 A see        | B look     | C watch   |

**be going to; will/won't; Present continuous for future**

**1 Choose the best answer (A or B).**

- 1 They ..... in a fishing competition.  
**A** aren't going to compete  
**B** aren't compete
- 2 I ..... the mountain even if it takes me two days.  
**A** am to climb  
**B** am going to climb
- 3 Freddy ..... the survival team tomorrow.  
**A** aren't going to join  
**B** isn't going to join
- 4 We ..... with sharks on our trip next week!  
**A** are going to swim  
**B** are to swimming
- 5 She ..... in a beautiful hotel in the mountains.  
**A** is going stay  
**B** is going to stay

**2 Complete the questions with the correct form of be going to and the verbs given.**

- 1 ..... Peter ..... an island?  
(visit)
- 2 ..... Sara and Peter ..... on holiday to Turkey? (go)
- 3 ..... Sara ..... to the waterfall? (walk)
- 4 ..... Sara and Peter both ..... an island? (visit)
- 5 ..... Peter ..... to the waterfall? (walk)

**3 Look at the table and answer the questions in 2.**

	Go on holiday to Turkey	Visit an island	Walk to the waterfall
Sara	✓	✗	✓
Peter	✓	✗	✗

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....

**4 Complete the sentences with will or won't and the verbs given.**

- 1 Scientists are sure that the climate ..... a great deal in the future.  
(change)
- 2 The world population ..... any time soon. (fall)
- 3 Wind power ..... more common as oil runs out. (become)
- 4 The problem with rubbish ..... until governments find a solution. (disappear)
- 5 Air pollution ..... as long as the number of cars increases. (decrease)

**5 Find and correct the mistakes.**

- 1 They are go to Joe's party tonight.
- 2 We isn't catching the 10 o'clock train tomorrow.
- 3 I'm going to shopping on Saturday morning.
- 4 Tina is travel to France on Monday.
- 5 Dad aren't taking me to school tomorrow.

**6 Complete the text with these words.**

will increase • won't grow • will reduce  
 are meeting • will it be • won't be • will cause  
 will affect • are we going to do

Climate change is a much-talked about subject at the moment. Scientists are seeing great changes to the climate because of the amount of carbon dioxide that is entering the atmosphere. According to scientists, the Earth's average temperature (1) ..... even more over the next twenty years. This (2) ..... the ice and snow in the Arctic and Antarctic. This in turn (3) ..... the sea level to rise. All these changes (4) ..... the ecosystem and our natural environment. For example, food crops (5) ..... so well and there (6) ..... enough water in some countries. The question is what (7) ..... about it? Governments are trying to reduce carbon dioxide emissions and they are investing money in new sources of energy. But (8) ..... enough? Governments (9) ..... soon for the yearly UN Climate Change Conference but there is still a lot of work needed before climate change can be slowed down.

## Quick on the draw

You're going to buy a new laptop.	You're going to see a film at the cinema.
You're going to have a picnic.	You're going to take an exam.
You're going to go swimming.	You're going to have a birthday party.
You're going to go to the zoo.	You're going to have a meal in a restaurant.
You're going to go camping.	You're going to go to the beach.
You're going to meet a friend at the airport.	You're going to have a holiday.
You're going to do your homework.	You're going to play table tennis.
You're going to watch a football match.	You're going to get up early tomorrow.
You're going to climb a mountain.	You're going to get married.
You're going to take your dog for a walk.	You're going to be rich and famous.

Open comprehension

1 Read the text in exercise 3 quickly. Find these numbers:

- a a year (x2) .....
- b a number of people .....
- c a number of minutes (x2) .....

2 Read the sentences. Correct the personality adjectives in bold.

- 1 My maths teacher is nice but she never laughs. She's very **cheerful**. *serious*
- 2 My brother never buys me a birthday present. He's so **generous**!
- 3 My friend is good at looking after children. He's very **irresponsible**.
- 4 My mother works 10 hours a day. She's really **lazy**.
- 5 My favourite actor always says bad things about people. He's **kind**, but very funny!
- 6 My sister doesn't talk much when there are a lot of people. She's **confident**.

**Exam tip**

In open comprehension reading activities, there are a lot of possible correct answers. Your answer must include the information that the question asks for. Remember to use the correct spelling and punctuation. You can find the spelling of some of the words in the text, but remember not to copy the sentences from the text.

3 Answer the following questions in your own words according to the information given in the text. Do not copy from the text.

- 1 How does social media sometimes make Millie feel?  
.....
- 2 What does Millie tell us about young people in Spain?  
.....
- 3 What happens if you spend less time on social media apps, according to Millie?  
.....
- 4 Why does Millie post more serious things on one social media platform?  
.....
- 5 Why does Millie say we shouldn't feel jealous about what we see on social media?  
.....

My happy place

This week I'm thinking about social media ...



Hi! I'm Millie.

Do you sometimes feel sad, stressed or jealous after using social media? Yes, me too! A recent survey asked more than 5,000 people from Generation Z – people born between 1997 and 2012 – how they felt about using social media and technology. Almost half of them said it is not good for their physical and mental health. Young people were most concerned about this in Spain (59%), Australia (55%) and France (53%).

I also read about an app that records how people use other apps. It found that people who spend less time on social media apps are happier about using them. Apparently, if you spend more than about 25 minutes on a social media app, you will probably feel unhappy about it. Yes, I think that's true! I feel best if I stop looking at social media after about 15 minutes.

I read another article that said people often have different personalities for different social media platforms. That's strange, but I think it's true too. On one platform, which only my friends use, I post a lot of funny photos with my friends. On another platform, which my parents and grandparents use, I'm more serious. I sometimes post to say I've finished writing a story or I've done well in an exam. People on that platform probably think I'm hard-working and responsible!

Here's what I think. What you see on social media isn't always real, so we shouldn't feel jealous about other people's lives. What do you think? Let me know in the comments!



4 Read the text again and find words that have these meanings.

- a a set of questions to find out about what people do or think about something (paragraph 1) .....
- b to keep information (paragraph 2) .....
- c I've read/heard that ... (paragraph 2) .....
- d a type of website or app (paragraph 3) .....

A2 Key Part 5

- Look at the gaps in the text in exercise 3. What is this task mainly testing?
  - your vocabulary: the words you know on a topic, for example, words for feelings
  - your grammar: if you use the correct forms of the word, and if the word is right in the sentence
- Look at the photos then write the missing letters to complete the feelings.



1 ti ..... e .....



2 e ..... i ..... e .....



3 d i ..... a ..... oi ..... e .....



4 i ..... e ..... e ..... e .....



5 s ..... e ..... e .....



6 re ..... a ..... e .....



7 su ..... i ..... e .....



8 wo ..... ie.....

**Exam tip**

Key Part 5 tests how well you understand grammatical forms and the relationships between words, phrases, clauses and sentences. Note that the missing words may be conjunctions, adverbs, prepositions and auxiliary verbs. Some common fixed phrases and phrasal verbs may also be tested.

- For each question, write the correct answer. Write one word for each gap.

**From:** tyler@friendsmail.com

**To:** chloe@friendsmail.com

Yesterday **(1)** ..... the worst day ever! I was really excited because I had a ticket to see Cat Burns – she's **(2)** ..... favourite singer and songwriter. The concert was in a theatre in the city centre so I went **(3)** ..... bus. Unfortunately, the bus had a problem and it stopped. At first, I wasn't worried **(4)** ..... I was early for the concert. But after an hour, I was very stressed! I decided to get off the bus and walk **(5)** ..... the concert. The theatre was further away than I thought. I had to walk **(6)** ..... an hour so I was tired. When I arrived at the theatre, the concert was finished! I was so disappointed. ☹

I hope your day was better **(7)** ..... mine!

**Comparative adjectives; Superlative adjectives; Articles**

**1 Circle the correct alternative.**

- 1 Argentina is *biger/bigger* than Spain with an area of over 2.5 million km<sup>2</sup>.
- 2 China's population is *larger/more large* than Russia's.
- 3 The average temperature in Mexico is *higher that/higher than* the average temperature in the UK.
- 4 The UK capital, London, is *older/older than* Santiago, Chile's capital.
- 5 It is *more expensive/expensive* to live in Hong Kong than in Rome.

**2 Complete the text with the comparative form of the adjectives given.**

My best friend Nico and I both took our driving tests yesterday. I think I was (1) ..... (stressed) than Nico about the whole test, but Nico was (2) ..... (worried) about parking. When we both found out we passed, I don't know who was (3) ..... (surprised). We were very happy and excited, but I think our parents were even (4) ..... (happy) than us. Now they don't have to drive us around! Then, my parents gave me the keys to a new car, so I was even (5) ..... (excited).

**3 Find and correct the mistakes.**

- 1 Jane is most responsible person I know.
- 2 Patrick is the most kindest boy in the class.
- 3 Of all the children I teach, I think the twins are the quieter.
- 4 Who do you think is the intelligent man in the world?
- 5 Rachel is most serious girl in the group.
- 6 They are the most laziest students in the year.

**4 Complete the text with a, an, the or – (no article).**

Stomp is (1) ..... percussion group that performs using (2) ..... variety of everyday objects such as brushes, bins and boxes. The musicians come from all over (3) ..... world. (4) ..... group started in 1991 and still performs today. Stomp plays in (5) ..... theatres and stadiums in many countries every year. They took part in (6) ..... closing ceremony of the 2012 London Olympics. They have even produced (7) ..... IMAX 3D film.

**5 Choose the best answer (A or B).**

Comic Relief is (1) ..... charity which began in 1985 when some celebrities worked together. They wanted to raise money to help people affected by (2) ..... famine in Africa. More than twenty years (3) ..... this charity is (4) ..... than ever. Now it helps countries worldwide. It supports organisations that help fight homelessness, hunger and poverty. Every two years Red Nose Day takes place in (5) ..... UK and the public give money to (6) ..... cause. In 2015, Red Nose Day raised almost £100 million, which is (7) ..... year so far. Some celebrities volunteer to do challenges to raise money for Comic Relief and these are becoming (8) ..... I think one of (9) ..... challenges was when (10) ..... woman cycled, swam and ran 500 miles from Edinburgh to London in a week. Other celebrities are (11) ..... organising funny TV programmes or producing a hit single.

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 A the                 | B a                   |
| 2 A a                   | B the                 |
| 3 A later               | B late                |
| 4 A more famous         | B the more famous     |
| 5 A the                 | B an                  |
| 6 A a                   | B the                 |
| 7 A the most successful | B the more successful |
| 8 A more hard           | B harder              |
| 9 A the most difficult  | B most difficult      |
| 10 A the                | B a                   |
| 11 A more happy         | B happier             |

## Comparative and superlative bingo

Write nine sentences (one in each space on your grid), using a comparative or superlative form of some of these adjectives. Then play Bingo!

angry	difficult	funny	intelligent	short
bad	easy	good	kind	slow
beautiful	expensive	happy	lazy	serious
big	far	hard	long	tall
bored	fast	hard-working	old	hot
cheap	sad	high	tired	worried
cold	friendly	important	responsible	modern



Open comprehension

- 1 Read the text in exercise 3 quickly. Find these numbers:
  - a a year (x2) .....
  - b a number of people .....
  - c a number of minutes (x2) .....
  
- 2 Read the sentences. Correct the personality adjectives in bold.
  - 1 My maths teacher is nice but she never laughs. She's very **cheerful**. *serious*
  - 2 My brother never buys me a birthday present. He's so **generous**!
  - 3 My friend is good at looking after children. He's very **irresponsible**.
  - 4 My mother works 10 hours a day. She's really **lazy**.
  - 5 My favourite actor always says bad things about people. He's **kind**, but very funny!
  - 6 My sister doesn't talk much when there are a lot of people. She's **confident**.

**Exam tip**

In open comprehension reading activities, there are a lot of possible correct answers. Your answer must include the information that the question asks for. Remember to use the correct spelling and punctuation. You can find the spelling of some of the words in the text, but remember not to copy the sentences from the text.

- 3 Answer the following questions in your own words according to the information given in the text. Do not copy from the text.
  - 1 How does social media sometimes make Millie feel? .....
  - 2 What does Millie tell us about young people in Spain? .....
  - 3 What happens if you spend less time on social media apps, according to Millie? .....
  - 4 Why does Millie post more serious things on one social media platform? .....
  - 5 Why does Millie say we shouldn't feel jealous about what we see on social media? .....

*My happy place*

**This week I'm thinking about social media ...**



Hi! I'm Millie.

Do you sometimes feel sad, stressed or jealous after using social media? Yes, me too! A recent survey asked more than 5,000 people from Generation Z – people born between 1997 and 2012 – how they felt about using social media and technology. Almost half of them said it is not good for their physical and mental health. Young people were most concerned about this in Spain (59%), Australia (55%) and France (53%).

I also read about an app that records how people use other apps. It found that people who spend less time on social media apps are happier about using them. Apparently, if you spend more than about 25 minutes on a social media app, you will probably feel unhappy about it. Yes, I think that's true! I feel best if I stop looking at social media after about 15 minutes.

I read another article that said people often have different personalities for different social media platforms. That's strange, but I think it's true too. On one platform, which only my friends use, I post a lot of funny photos with my friends. On another platform, which my parents and grandparents use, I'm more serious. I sometimes post to say I've finished writing a story or I've done well in an exam. People on that platform probably think I'm hard-working and responsible!

Here's what I think. What you see on social media isn't always real, so we shouldn't feel jealous about other people's lives. What do you think? Let me know in the comments!



- 4 Read the text again and find words that have these meanings.
  - a a set of questions to find out about what people do or think about something (paragraph 1) .....
  - b to keep information (paragraph 2) .....
  - c I've read/heard that ... (paragraph 2) .....
  - d a type of website or app (paragraph 3) .....

A2 Key Part 5

- Look at the gaps in the text in exercise 3. What is this task mainly testing?
  - your vocabulary: the words you know on a topic, for example, words for feelings
  - your grammar: if you use the correct forms of the word, and if the word is right in the sentence
- Look at the photos then write the missing letters to complete the feelings.



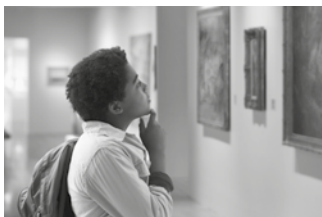
1 ti ..... e .....



2 e ..... i ..... e .....



3 d i ..... a ..... oi ..... e .....



4 i ..... e ..... e ..... e .....



5 s ..... e ..... e .....



6 re ..... a ..... e .....



7 su ..... i ..... e .....



8 wo ..... ie.....

**Exam tip**

Key Part 5 tests how well you understand grammatical forms and the relationships between words, phrases, clauses and sentences. Note that the missing words may be conjunctions, adverbs, prepositions and auxiliary verbs. Some common fixed phrases and phrasal verbs may also be tested.

- For each question, write the correct answer. Write one word for each gap.

**From:** tyler@friendsmail.com

**To:** chloe@friendsmail.com

Yesterday **(1)** ..... the worst day ever! I was really excited because I had a ticket to see Cat Burns – she's **(2)** ..... favourite singer and songwriter. The concert was in a theatre in the city centre so I went **(3)** ..... bus. Unfortunately, the bus had a problem and it stopped. At first, I wasn't worried **(4)** ..... I was early for the concert. But after an hour, I was very stressed! I decided to get off the bus and walk **(5)** ..... the concert. The theatre was further away than I thought. I had to walk **(6)** ..... an hour so I was tired. When I arrived at the theatre, the concert was finished! I was so disappointed. ☹

I hope your day was better **(7)** ..... mine!

**Comparative adjectives; Superlative adjectives; Articles**

**1 Circle the correct alternative.**

- 1 Argentina is *biger/bigger* than Spain with an area of over 2.5 million km<sup>2</sup>.
- 2 China's population is *larger/more large* than Russia's.
- 3 The average temperature in Mexico is *higher that/higher than* the average temperature in the UK.
- 4 The UK capital, London, is *older/older than* Santiago, Chile's capital.
- 5 It is *more expensive/expensive* to live in Hong Kong than in Rome.

**2 Complete the text with the comparative form of the adjectives given.**

My best friend Nico and I both took our driving tests yesterday. I think I was (1) ..... (stressed) than Nico about the whole test, but Nico was (2) ..... (worried) about parking. When we both found out we passed, I don't know who was (3) ..... (surprised). We were very happy and excited, but I think our parents were even (4) ..... (happy) than us. Now they don't have to drive us around! Then, my parents gave me the keys to a new car, so I was even (5) ..... (excited).

**3 Find and correct the mistakes.**

- 1 Jane is most responsible person I know.
- 2 Patrick is the most kindest boy in the class.
- 3 Of all the children I teach, I think the twins are the quieter.
- 4 Who do you think is the intelligent man in the world?
- 5 Rachel is most serious girl in the group.
- 6 They are the most laziest students in the year.

**4 Complete the text with a, an, the or – (no article).**

Stomp is (1) ..... percussion group that performs using (2) ..... variety of everyday objects such as brushes, bins and boxes. The musicians come from all over (3) ..... world. (4) ..... group started in 1991 and still performs today. Stomp plays in (5) ..... theatres and stadiums in many countries every year. They took part in (6) ..... closing ceremony of the 2012 London Olympics. They have even produced (7) ..... IMAX 3D film.

**5 Choose the best answer (A or B).**

Comic Relief is (1) ..... charity which began in 1985 when some celebrities worked together. They wanted to raise money to help people affected by (2) ..... famine in Africa. More than twenty years (3) ..... this charity is (4) ..... than ever. Now it helps countries worldwide. It supports organisations that help fight homelessness, hunger and poverty. Every two years Red Nose Day takes place in (5) ..... UK and the public give money to (6) ..... cause. In 2015, Red Nose Day raised almost £100 million, which is (7) ..... year so far. Some celebrities volunteer to do challenges to raise money for Comic Relief and these are becoming (8) ..... I think one of (9) ..... challenges was when (10) ..... woman cycled, swam and ran 500 miles from Edinburgh to London in a week. Other celebrities are (11) ..... organising funny TV programmes or producing a hit single.

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 A the                 | B a                   |
| 2 A a                   | B the                 |
| 3 A later               | B late                |
| 4 A more famous         | B the more famous     |
| 5 A the                 | B an                  |
| 6 A a                   | B the                 |
| 7 A the most successful | B the more successful |
| 8 A more hard           | B harder              |
| 9 A the most difficult  | B most difficult      |
| 10 A the                | B a                   |
| 11 A more happy         | B happier             |

## Comparative and superlative bingo

Write nine sentences (one in each space on your grid), using a comparative or superlative form of some of these adjectives. Then play Bingo!

angry	difficult	funny	intelligent	short
bad	easy	good	kind	slow
beautiful	expensive	happy	lazy	serious
big	far	hard	long	tall
bored	fast	hard-working	old	hot
cheap	sad	high	tired	worried
cold	friendly	important	responsible	modern

True/False

- 1 If you don't understand a word in a text and you can't check it in a dictionary, what should you do?
  - a Stop reading until you can check it in a dictionary.
  - b Continue reading, then go back and read the other words around it and try to understand what it means.
  - c Don't look at that sentence; only look at sentences which have words you understand.
- 2 Look at the photos then write the missing letters to complete the words.



- |                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 ..... r ..... s           | 4 ..... i ..... t      |
| 2 ..... h ..... r ..... s   | 5 b ..... nd ..... a   |
| 3 ..... a n ..... b ..... g | 6 ..... k ..... r..... |

**Exam tip**

Don't worry about words or phrases you don't understand the first time you read a text – this is normal. Read the text again and try to understand what the words and phrases mean by looking at the other words.

3 Read the text and decide if the statements are True (T) or False (F).

- |  |       |
|--|-------|
| 1 Scarlett is worried about the environment.             | T / F |
| 2 Scarlett made two things from an old pair of jeans.    | T / F |
| 3 Scarlett made a bandana from an old skirt.             | T / F |
| 4 Scarlett says it was easy to make a dress.             | T / F |
| 5 Scarlett has made some videos about upcycling.         | T / F |
| 6 Scarlett thinks people should buy second-hand clothes. | T / F |

So Scarlett

Old clothes, new fashion



Hi! I'm Scarlett.

Producing clothes is very bad for the environment. It uses a huge amount of water and this has created deserts in some areas. It also creates pollution in rivers, and many other problems. I don't want to add to these problems so I'm trying to stop buying new clothes. Instead, I've started making new clothes from old ones! It's called 'upcycling'.

My first creation was easy to make. I had an old pair of jeans that I didn't wear anymore because the legs were too short. I cut the legs off and made them into a pair of shorts. Then I used the legs to make a handbag! Since then, I've upcycled lots of clothes and I think everyone should do it! Start with something easy like making jeans into shorts. I've also made bandanas from old shirts, and skirts from old scarfs – they were easy too. When you get more confident, you can start making more complicated things. I've just finished a new dress – I made that from two old blouses! That was harder but I enjoyed making it and I think it looks really cool.

I'm going to make some videos about upcycling soon because I want to encourage lots of people to do it. If you think upcycling sounds too hard, though, don't worry. There are other ways to reduce the number of new clothes you buy. It's easy to buy stylish second-hand clothes online, for example. If we all stop buying so many new clothes, we can make a big difference.



4 Read the text again and find words that have these meanings.

- a making something to be sold (paragraph 1) .....
- b something that somebody has made (paragraph 2) .....
- c difficult to do or understand; having lots of different parts (paragraph 2) .....
- d attractive and cool (paragraph 3) .....

## A2 Key Part 4

1 Read the text in exercise 3 quickly and choose the best title.

- a An unusual town
- b A blog about bread
- c A teenager's bakery

2 Complete the sentences with these words.

bakery • chemist's • jeweller's • post office • sports shop • supermarket

- 1 You can send a letter at the .....
- 2 You can buy bread and cake at the ....., but you can't buy vegetables.

3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 3 You can buy trainers, balls and tracksuits at the .....
- 4 You can buy rings and necklaces at the .....
- 5 You can buy many different kinds of food at the .....
- 6 You can buy medicine at the .....

✓ Exam tip

After reading the text quickly and then reading the sentences with gaps carefully, choose the word that best completes the gap out of the three choices. Decide why the other two are wrong. Then complete all the gaps and read the whole text again to check it makes sense.

If you walk up Watlington High Street in the morning, past the small supermarket, the chemist's and the post office, you'll see a long line of **(1)** ..... waiting outside a small shop called the Orange Bakery. Its delicious **(2)** ..... is made by a teenager, Kitty Tait, who runs the bakery with her dad. Kitty had to **(3)** ..... school when she was 14 because she was very unhappy and stressed. **(4)** ..... bread helped her to feel better and she became very good at it. She started **(5)** ..... her bread to neighbours, and it was so popular that she was able to open the bakery in 2019. Kitty loves working with her dad and she has even **(6)** ..... a book with him. Now, he isn't only her dad; he's also her colleague and friend.



- |             |          |           |
|-------------|----------|-----------|
| 1 A crowd   | B people | C group   |
| 2 A food    | B meal   | C dish    |
| 3 A go      | B leave  | C lose    |
| 4 A Making  | B Doing  | C Working |
| 5 A selling | B buying | C paying  |
| 6 A given   | B put    | C written |

**Present perfect; Present perfect with ever, never, just, already and yet**

**1 Complete the sentences with the correct present perfect form of the verbs given.**

- They ..... several famous people in London. (meet)
- I ..... New York before. It's an amazing city. (visit)
- Jack ..... a car. He always uses public transport. (not drive)
- You ..... time to do the shopping, so let's go together. (not have)
- She ..... to the manager and solved the problem. (speak)

**2 Circle the correct alternative.**

- Have you ever/never been to a fancy dress party?
- I have never/ever bought expensive sunglasses.
- She has ever/never worn a watch.
- Has he never/ever had to wear tights in a play before?
- We have never/ever seen such lovely jewellery.

**3 Put the words in order to make sentences.**

- just / she / a colourful / bought / silk scarf / has  
.....
- they / already / eaten / lunch / have  
.....
- yet / haven't / to the chemist's / been / I  
.....
- a new bookshop / just / opened / has / on King Street  
.....
- Jake / yet / found / a new suit / hasn't  
.....
- we / seen / the fashion show / have / already  
.....

**4 Complete the sentences with just, already or yet.**

- The magazine has ..... written about London Fashion Week. I read the article last month.
- They haven't seen the latest collection by Dior .....
- Look in this bag! I've ..... bought a new dress for the party.
- She hasn't booked a supermodel for the show .....
- We have ..... used this colour. We need to find an alternative.

**5 Complete the dialogue with the words, the correct present perfect form of the verbs given and the correct short answer.**

**Gran:** Where did you get that top? It's lovely!  
**Amy:** Thanks, Gran. It's from Boden. It  
 (1) ..... (just arrive).  
**Gran:** I (2) ..... (never hear) of that shop. Where is it?  
**Amy:** It's an online shop.  
**Gran:** I (3) ..... (never buy) anything online.  
**Amy:** It's very easy, Gran, and it means you don't have to go into town. I do lots of shopping online. I  
 (4) ..... (already do) a supermarket shop this morning.  
**Gran:** Well, I prefer going into town. (5) ..... you ..... (notice) the new shoe shop in the High Street?  
**Amy:** No, I (6) .....  
**Gran:** They've got some beautiful boots in the window. I (7) ..... (not be) in yet though. Oh and a bakery  
 (8) ..... (just open) in Queen Street. They sell the most delicious cakes you (9) ..... (ever see)!

**6 Complete the text with the correct present perfect form of these verbs.**

never study • appear • hear • sell • visit  
 become • open • learn • wear

(1) ..... you ..... of Manolo Blahnik? Of course you have. He is one of the most famous shoe designers in the world and his shoes  
 (2) ..... an essential item for many celebrities. Manolo was born in 1942 in the Canary Islands. He (3) ..... shops in lots of different countries, including the US, Hong Kong and the United Arab Emirates. Interestingly, he  
 (4) ..... how to make shoes. He  
 (5) ..... his skills by visiting shoe factories and talking to shoemakers. If you don't want to buy a pair of expensive Manolos, then perhaps you prefer to shop in Zara, which (6) ..... always ..... fashionable clothes and shoes for men and women at reasonable prices. This store opened in 1975 in Galicia. Since then, Zara  
 (7) ..... in cities all over the world. Many celebrities (8) ..... Zara outfits too. (9) ..... you ..... a Zara store yet?

## Present perfect charades

## Cards for Team A

I've won a competition.

I've already cooked your dinner.

I haven't cleaned my teeth yet.

I've drunk ten glasses of water.

I've sent six emails this morning.

I've just read an interesting book.

Have you phoned your parents yet?

I've just found a lot of money in the street.

I've met a lot of famous people.

What have you done?

## Cards for Team B

I've been to the US.

I've already done my homework.

Where have you been?

I've made ten phone calls today.

I've just seen a very big spider under the bed.

I've just bought a new bicycle.

Have you done the shopping yet?

My laptop has broken.

I've eaten five biscuits.

I haven't washed my hair yet.



A2 Key Part 2

1 Read the article in exercise 3 quickly. Which paragraphs ...? (You can tick ✓ more than one.)

	Sai	Evie	Lucas
a are about inventions?			
b are about the future?			
c are about types of transport?			
d say if the inventions will be cheap or expensive?			

2 Look at the photos then put the letters in order to make words for inventions.



latbte .....



hglit lubb .....



odner .....



snavat .....



rigfed .....



arosmntpeh .....



liteccre rac .....



nerpitr .....

**Exam tip**

After reading the texts quickly, look for the information you need to answer each question. After you have found information in one text, check that the other two texts do not have information about the same question. When more than one text has information about a question, decide which one matches it best.

3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

**INVENTIONS OF THE FUTURE: OUR IDEAS**



**Sai**

I think better, cheaper electric cars will be developed. They'll be solar-powered, but they won't need a lot of sun. They'll work well even in rainy countries like the UK! They won't be expensive to produce, so most people will be able to buy one. I hope they'll be popular. If everyone stops using cars that create pollution, it will make a big difference to our planet.



**Evie**

Smartphones and tablets aren't very good for reading. The blue light from the screen is bad for your eyes, and it can stop you sleeping. E-readers are much better for reading, but bad for videos and so on. Soon, I think you'll be able to press a button to change your smartphone screen. First it will be like a normal smartphone screen, then it will look like paper. They won't be cheap but everyone will buy them.



**Lucas**


If you're in a city and you need to travel fast, you get a taxi. In the future, I think you'll get a drone instead. There'll be big drones that one or two people can sit in. You'll use an app to say where you want to go, and a drone will arrive for you. I've read that passenger drones have already been invented, but I hope this idea is developed so we see drone taxis in our cities soon. They sound really fun!

- Who has an idea that will help people travel faster?
- Who talks about a problem with devices we have now?
- Who has an idea that will help the environment?
- Who has an idea that will be better for people's eyes?
- Who wants everyone to use the new product?
- Who thinks the new product will probably be expensive?
- Who thinks they will enjoy using the new invention?

Sai	Evie	Lucas
A	B	C
A	B	C
A	B	C
A	B	C
A	B	C
A	B	C
A	B	C

A2 Key Part 1

1 Read the six short texts in exercise 3 quickly. Match the photos to the texts (1–6).

<p>a </p> <p>.....</p>	<p>b </p> <p>.....</p>
<p>c </p> <p>.....</p>	<p>d </p> <p>.....</p>
<p>e </p> <p>.....</p>	<p>f </p> <p>.....</p>

2 Choose the correct alternative.

- 1 You can find more expression/information about her in the book *Great Inventors and Designers*.
- 2 This article's introduction/decision is very boring. I don't want to read the rest of it.
- 3 Can you give me a description/an inspiration of the man you saw?
- 4 It's a very good essay, but I don't agree with your creation/conclusion.
- 5 We need some good ideas. Use your imagination/organisation!
- 6 I don't know how to use it. Can you give me an action/a demonstration?

**Exam tip**

In three-option multiple choice activities with short texts, you should read the three options carefully. Check that the option you choose matches the meaning of the text exactly.

3 For each question, choose the correct answer.

1 **Design competition**  
 Design the car of the future and win a tablet!  
 Open to all aged 12–18.  
 See our website for more information.

- A If you want to enter the competition, you must design a tablet.
- B You can find out more about the competition online.
- C People of all ages can enter this competition.

2 **No drones near the lake!**  
 Eagles live here and they don't like drones!  
 Be a responsible tourist.

- A Tourists mustn't take photos of the eagles.
- B It's irresponsible to go near the lake.
- C Drones are not allowed here because of the eagles.

3 Hi Alfie,  
 Have you done the English homework? I don't know what to write for the introduction and conclusion. Help!  
 Caitlyn

- A Caitlyn thinks some of the English homework is hard.
- B Alfie needs help with his introduction and conclusion.
- C Caitlyn has finished her English homework.

4 **Notice**  
 Vaccines for classes 7A, 7B and 7C tomorrow, between 10 am and 1 pm in the school nurse's office.  
 Please wait until your teacher tells you to go.

- A Three classes are going to have vaccines tomorrow.
- B All students should go to the nurse's office at 10am.
- C Students should tell their teachers if they are going to have the vaccine.

5 **NOTICE TO OUR CUSTOMERS**  
 If you would like to see a demonstration of our products, please ask at the information desk.

- A You can find out about one of the products at the information desk.
- B You can email to ask for more information about the new products.
- C Somebody will show you how the products work if you ask.

6 **SPECIAL OFFER!**  
 Get a free polo shirt when you buy a sweatshirt, hoodie or joggers.

- A Sweatshirts are cheaper today.
- B You don't have to pay for a polo shirt if you buy a hoodie.
- C You don't have to pay for joggers if you buy a polo shirt.

**The passive; The passive with by; Zero conditional; First conditional**

**1 Circle the correct alternative.**

- 1 Televisions is/are found in homes all over the world today.
- 2 Cars was/were invented around the end of the 1800s.
- 3 The washing machine is/are used every day in our house.
- 4 The first digital camera was/were made in 1975.
- 5 Smartphones wasn't/weren't invented in the 1960s.

**2 Put the words in order to make sentences. Use by if necessary.**

- 1 The Statue of Liberty / designed / Bartholdi and Eiffel / was  
.....
- 2 In the film / James Bond / was / Daniel Craig / played / *No Time to Die*  
.....
- 3 was / The first fridge / sold / in / 1913  
.....
- 4 The sound of Big Ben / was / for the first time / heard / in 1859  
.....
- 5 *Becoming* / written / Michelle Obama / was  
.....

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs given.**

- 1 Microwaves ..... in most kitchens these days. (find)
- 2 The first oilfield in England ..... in 1919 in Derbyshire. (discover)
- 3 My laptop ..... mainly by my son when he's home from school. (use)
- 4 The film *Jurassic World 3: Dominion* ..... by Steven Spielberg. (not direct)
- 5 Our DVD player ..... much anymore. (not use)

**4 Choose the best answer (A or B).**

- 1 If I drink coffee at night, I ..... well.  
A not sleep      B don't sleep
- 2 If you ..... the door, the dishwasher stops.  
A will open      B open
- 3 If you ..... the microwave, it saves time.  
A use      B will use
- 4 If Dad cooks dinner, Mum ..... the dishes.  
A washes      B wash
- 5 If you ..... that button, the music plays.  
A will touch      B touch

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs given.**

- 1 If you play the drums loudly, the neighbours ..... angry. (be)
- 2 If he ..... hard, he will pass the exam. (study)
- 3 If they invent an app, they ..... it to a multinational company. (sell)
- 4 If she ..... to school, she'll have a lot of extra homework. (not go)
- 5 If we don't eat now, we ..... hungry later. (be)

**6 Choose the best answer (A, B or C).**

If you (1) ..... people to name important inventions of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, the list (2) ..... cars, planes, personal computers and, of course, the Internet. The Internet is a form of communication that (3) ..... widely today. It (4) ..... in one particular year, it was developed over several decades. In the 1970s, networks (5) ..... internally by research companies. In 1989, a browser called the World Wide Web was created (6) ..... Tim Berners-Lee. A few years later other browsers such as Firefox and Chrome were working too. All of them (7) ..... today. In the space of fifteen years the way we communicate has changed completely. The Internet (8) ..... for shopping, banking and finding out information rapidly. If we (9) ..... to use the Internet regularly, we (10) ..... to people face-to-face so often. It's a fact that if you (11) ..... something, you (12) ..... how to do it. Will we forget how to communicate with other people?

- |    |                 |                    |                   |
|----|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1  | A will ask      | B ask              | C asked           |
| 2  | A will          | B will include     | C include         |
| 3  | A are used      | B is used          | C was used        |
| 4  | A was invented  | B weren't invented | C wasn't invented |
| 5  | A were used     | B was used         | C is used         |
| 6  | A by            | B from             | C for             |
| 7  | A is still used | B were still used  | C are still used  |
| 8  | A is used       | B was used         | C are used        |
| 9  | A will continue | B is continue      | C continue        |
| 10 | A won't talk    | B will talk        | C is talked       |
| 11 | A do practise   | B practise         | C don't practise  |
| 12 | A will forget   | B forget           | C is forgotten    |

## Fascinating facts

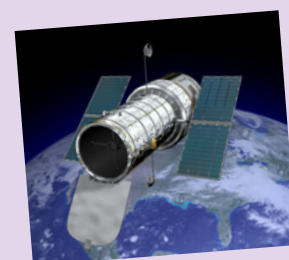
## 1 Complete the quiz! Can you guess the missing information?

1 ENIAC (one of the first computers) ..... to the public in 1946. It was the size of a big ???. (present)

2 The first computer mouse ..... in 1964 by Doug Engelbart. It wasn't plastic, it was ???. (make)



3 The Hubble Space Telescope is 13 metres long and it ..... into space in 1990. It cost more than \$???. (launch)



4 The largest egg in the world ..... by a ???. It can be more than 25 centimetres long. (lay)

5 The same number of small bones ('vertebrae') ..... in both a ???'s and a human's neck. (find)

6 25% of the oxygen our body needs ..... by our ???. (use)



7 The highest temperature on Earth ..... in the US in Death Valley in 1913. It was ???°C. (record)

8 The LHC (Large Hadron Collider) is the largest 'fridge' in the world. It's ?? long and it ..... by scientists to study physics questions. (use)

9 According to some studies, more than 200,000 people per year ..... by lightning and more than ?? ..... (hit, kill)



10 The first mobile phone that ..... in the US in the 1980s cost \$???. (sell)



**BRITISH  
COUNCIL  
RESOURCES**



Watch the video and read the conversation between Sophie and Mei. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of modal verbs.



**Grammar  
Snacks**

### 1. Check your grammar: matching – invitations, offers and requests

Match the two sentence halves and write a – h next to the number 1 – 8.

- |        |  |    |  |
|--------|--|----|--|
| 1..... | Would you like to come for lunch this weekend?       | a. | Oh, yes, please! Could you?                                    |
| 2..... | Can you help me with this table a moment?            | b. | Well, actually, my mum's not feeling well. Maybe another time. |
| 3..... | Could you tell me where the nearest bank is, please? | c. | I suppose so. But I need it back before Friday.                |
| 4..... | Would you like me to ask my brother?                 | d. | Yes, of course. Here you go.                                   |
| 5..... | Can I come round to your house later?                | e. | Yes, sure. Where do you want to put it?                        |
| 6..... | Could you lend me £20, please?                       | f. | I'm sorry, I'm not from around here.                           |
| 7..... | Can I get you a cup of tea?                          | g. | No, I'm OK, thanks, I've just had one.                         |
| 8..... | Would you mind passing me that menu, please?         | h. | Oh, I'd love to, thank you.                                    |

### 2. Check your grammar: gap fill – invitations, offers and requests

Write the word to fill the gaps.

- Can I \_\_\_\_\_ you something to drink?
- Would you \_\_\_\_\_ if I closed the window?
- Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ come skating with us?
- Can I \_\_\_\_\_ you a hand?
- \_\_\_\_\_ you possibly lend me a pen, please?

6. Dad says we \_\_\_\_\_ borrow his bicycle if we're careful.
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ carry this, could you?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you be free for lunch on Saturday?

### 3. Check your grammar: word 2 word – invitations, offers and requests

Write the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. have some I Can water ?

.....

2. coffee Would like ? you a

.....

3. How ? I help can you

.....

4. do Could a favour me ? you

.....

5. giving a you me mind Would hand?

.....

6. up please? me Can pick you later,

.....

7. explain you Could this, please ?

.....

8. come for you round to like Would dinner?

.....



Watch the video and read the conversation between Sophie and Giovanni. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of comparative and superlative adjectives.


**Grammar  
Snacks**

### 1. Check your grammar: true or false – comparatives and superlatives

Are these sentences *True* or *False*?

- |    |  |             |              |
|----|--|-------------|--------------|
| 1. | To compare two things, we add <i>-er</i> to many adjectives.                               | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 2. | We add <i>-est</i> to make the superlative form of many adjectives.                        | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 3. | We never change the spelling of the adjective before adding <i>-er</i> / <i>-est</i> .     | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 4. | We often use " <i>than</i> " after a comparative.  | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 5. | We often use " <i>the</i> " before a superlative.  | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 6. | With longer adjectives, we use " <i>more</i> " + adjective or " <i>most</i> " + adjective. | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 7. | There are a lot of irregular comparatives and superlatives.                                | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |

### 2. Check your grammar: gap fill writing – comparatives and superlatives

Write the words to fill the gaps. Use comparatives and superlatives.

- The clothes here are \_\_\_\_\_ (good) than in my town.
- That's my \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) mark ever!
- It's \_\_\_\_\_ (far) than I thought – I think we're lost.
- That's the \_\_\_\_\_ (disgusting) meal I've ever had!
- I hope your team's \_\_\_\_\_ (lucky) today than last week.
- They're \_\_\_\_\_ (happy) in their new school than in their old one.
- It's the \_\_\_\_\_ (good) song on the album.
- Your spaghetti sauce is \_\_\_\_\_ (tasty) than my mum's.



### 3. Check your grammar: multiple choice – comparatives and superlatives

Circle the correct sentence.

1.
  - a. The more amazing thing just happened to me!
  - b. The most amazing thing just happened to me!
  - c. The amazingest thing just happened to me!
2.
  - a. He's a lot taller than you.
  - b. He's a lot taller you.
  - c. He's a lot taller from you.
3.
  - a. She's worst than me at maths.
  - b. She's worse than me at maths.
  - c. She's more bad than me at maths.
4.
  - a. He's the most good in the team at goal scoring.
  - b. He's the best in the team at goal scoring.
  - c. He's best in the team at goal scoring.
5.
  - a. This pizza isn't as good as Alfie's.
  - b. This pizza isn't as good Alfie's.
  - c. This pizza isn't as best Alfie's.
6.
  - a. It's frighteninger if you look down.
  - b. It's more frightening if you look down.
  - c. It's the frightening if you look down.
7.
  - a. Where's the most cheap place to eat?
  - b. Where's the more cheap place to eat?
  - c. Where's the cheapest place to eat?
8.
  - a. I've been running a lot. I think I'm faster now.
  - b. I've been running a lot. I think I'm more fast now.
  - c. I've been running a lot. I think I'm more faster now.

#### Discussion

Which meal do you think is tastier, fish and chips or pizza? Where do you get the best pizza where you live?



Watch the video on our website and read the conversation between Sophie and Anna. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of conditionals.


**Grammar  
Snacks**

### 1. Check your grammar: matching

Match the two sentence halves and write a–h next to the numbers 1–8.

- |        |                                      |    |                                      |
|--------|--------------------------------------|----|--------------------------------------|
| 1..... | If they don't stop that noise,       | a. | if I ate that.                       |
| 2..... | If I had enough money for a holiday, | b. | unless I have to babysit.            |
| 3..... | If you can't repair your headphones, | c. | I'll go next door and complain.      |
| 4..... | I'd be ill                           | d. | you might need to buy new ones.      |
| 5..... | If we had more space at home,        | e. | if you fancy a chat.                 |
| 6..... | Ice cream melts                      | f. | I'd go to Iceland.                   |
| 7..... | I'll see you on Saturday night       | g. | we could have a dog.                 |
| 8..... | Call me                              | h. | if you don't keep it in the freezer. |

### 2. Check your grammar: multiple choice

Circle the correct verb form to complete the conditional sentences.

- If the bus is late, I 'll be / 'd be / was late for school.
- I'll phone Charlie from home later if I remembered / remember / 'll remember .
- If I go to the shops this afternoon, I buy / 'll buy / would buy some chocolate for you.
- If I have / would / had enough money, you know I'd lend it to you.
- I can / could / 'll borrow my parents' car if I had my driving licence.
- I wouldn't / won't / not tell anyone if you tell me.
- If there's any cake left, I had / would have / 'll have another piece.
- If you had three wishes, what did / would / will you wish for?

### 3. Check your grammar: gap fill

Write one word to complete each conditional sentence.

1. If I \_\_\_\_\_ enough money, I'd buy a car.
2. If I \_\_\_\_\_ to Dan's party, I'll call you.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ sleep better if I didn't have to share a room.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you call me when you get there?
5. If I \_\_\_\_\_ have too much homework to do this weekend, I'll come out with you.
6. I'd \_\_\_\_\_ really bored without my phone!
7. If you \_\_\_\_\_ regular exercise, you'll feel a lot better.
8. You don't need to call me unless you \_\_\_\_\_ a problem.

#### Discussion

If you could go anywhere in the world on your next holiday, where would you go and why?



Watch the video on our website and read the conversation between Sophie and Hakan. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of English conjunctions.


**Grammar  
Snacks**

### 1. Check your grammar: matching – conjunctions

Match the two parts of the sentence and write a–h next to the numbers 1–8.

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1..... We wanted to go to the show | a. so we don't get there late.                 |
| 2..... I often make omelettes      | b. or at the football match?                   |
| 3..... Shall we go to the cinema   | c. because he laughs in his sleep.             |
| 4..... Burgers are very tasty      | d. and watch that film you were talking about? |
| 5..... My neighbours are friendly  | e. because they're quick and easy.             |
| 6..... Do you know if he's at home | f. although they are not very healthy.         |
| 7..... Pick me up early, please,   | g. but they're noisy.                          |
| 8..... We know he has great dreams | h. but there weren't any seats left.           |

### 2. Check your grammar: multiple choice – conjunctions

Circle the correct conjunction to complete these sentences.

- I'd love to stay **so / and / but** I have to catch my bus.
- His hot chocolate was too hot **so / and / but** he put some cold milk in it.
- Or / Although / Because** we had an umbrella, we got extremely wet.
- I only passed my exam **because / but / although** you helped me.
- They were hungry **but / because / so** they made some sandwiches.
- We can go to the pool **and / but / or** we can go horse-riding, whichever you prefer.
- She didn't want him to see her **and / so / although** she hid behind a plant.
- He's in the town centre **so / because / but** he wants to look for shoes.
- I'm definitely coming tonight, **or / because / although** I could be a bit late.
- We can go to the shop before we go to Clare's house **and / or / so** go to Clare's house first to see if she needs anything. What do you think?

### 3. Check your grammar: ordering – conjunctions

Write the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. don't | or | eat cheese | butter. | I

.....

2. but | him. | like | I | annoying | He's

.....

3. salad for lunch. | very hungry | we're having | We're not | so

.....

4. Although | very often. | a lot of friends, | she has | she doesn't go out

.....

5. to China | He's been | this year. | Brazil | and

.....

6. or go | Would you | to the chocolate factory? | swimming | rather go

.....

7. bed late | because | He's tired | he went to | last night. | today

.....

8. was terrible. | had a good time | We | although | the weather

.....

#### Discussion

Do you think you would enjoy camping at a music festival? Why or why not?



Watch the video and read the conversation between Sophie and Thierry. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of countable and uncountable nouns.





**Grammar Snacks**

**1. Check your grammar: picture matching**

Write the correct words in the boxes below the picture.

a cake	a coffee	a chicken	a pizza
some cake	some coffee	some chicken	some pizza

**2. Check your grammar: gap fill – countable and uncountable nouns**

Complete the gaps with a word from the box.

a	a	a	an	an	some	some	some
---	---	---	----	----	------	------	------

- They got \_\_\_\_\_ giant prawns for dinner.
- You'll need \_\_\_\_\_ umbrella if you go out.
- Daisy needs \_\_\_\_\_ new phone.

4. I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ potato with my salad.
5. Get \_\_\_\_\_ garlic, please.
6. How about \_\_\_\_\_ cup of tea?
7. I've got \_\_\_\_\_ idea!
8. Could you get me \_\_\_\_\_ more tea?

### 3. Check your grammar: error correction – countable and uncountable nouns

Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1. Would you like a apple?

.....

2. We need a peppers.

.....

3. Some dogs have four legs.

.....

4. Have a butter on your toast.

.....

5. Here's an lemon from our tree.

.....

6. I love some chocolate!

.....



Watch the video on our website and read the conversation between Sophie and Yu Quan. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of *must*, *have to* and *should*.



**Grammar  
Snacks**

### 1. Check your grammar: grouping – have to, must and should

Put the phrases in the correct groups.

drive on the right side of the road in the UK – everyone drives on the left!	call the emergency services if you just have a cold.	arrive at the airport early in case there are delays.
be seventeen to drive a car in the UK.	complete a lot of exams, study and training to be a doctor.	always get enough sleep before driving a car.
use your mobile phone during an exam.	rest and drink lots of liquids if you have a cold.	show your passport or identity card to get on a plane.

You <b>have to</b> ...	You <b>mustn't</b> ...	You <b>should</b> ...

### 2. Check your grammar: error correction – have to, must and should

Correct the mistakes and write these sentences on the line below.

1. You must to see the Chrysler Building when you're in New York.

.....

2. Do I should call him?

.....

3. You haven't to wear uniform in the sixth form.

.....



4. We don't must make any noise; my grandfather's sleeping.

.....

5. You really should to go and see a doctor about that.

.....

6. He doesn't should talk to people like that.

.....

7. Why we always have to come to the same café?

.....

8. Must you to make that terrible noise all the time?

.....

### 3. Check your grammar: word 2 word – have to, must and should

Write the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. You anyone tell mustn't !

.....

2. have We early be there to

.....

3. call remember I Dad to must

.....

4. don't to pay have You

.....

5. fruit ! salad should try this You

.....

6. class You late mustn't for be

.....

7. trainers get new should some You

.....

8. to You eat don't all have it

.....

9. it shouldn't about worry He

.....



Watch the video on our website and read the conversation between Sophie and Jun. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of passive forms.



**Grammar  
Snacks**

### 1. Check your grammar: true or false

Circle *True* or *False* for these sentences.

- |    |   |             |              |
|----|---|-------------|--------------|
| 1. | We use the passive when we don't want or need to specify who did the action.        | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 2. | We use the verb <i>have</i> and the past participle to form the passive.            | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 3. | You can't say who did the action when you're using the passive.                     | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 4. | The passive is not always formal.   | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 5. | In some contexts we can say <i>they</i> or <i>you</i> instead of using the passive. | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 6. | We also use <i>get</i> instead of <i>be</i> to form the passive sometimes.          | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |

### 2. Check your grammar: word 2 word

Write the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- stolen! My wallet been has

.....
- repaired. Our being television is

.....
- bags made are These by hand.

.....
- made The one week! film was in

.....
- not to were They asked do that.

.....

6. decided will be The winners next week.

.....

7. The Hunger were books. based Games films on a series of

.....

8. Over sold. three million have DVDs of Avatar been

.....

### 3. Check your grammar: gap fill

Complete the sentences using the passive.

1. The theatre has cancelled the play.

= The play \_\_\_\_\_ by the theatre.

2. Did someone tell the students about the trip?

= Were \_\_\_\_\_ about the trip?

3. They haven't announced the opening date yet.

= The opening date \_\_\_\_\_ yet.

4. A car hit my dog.

= My dog \_\_\_\_\_ by a car.

5. Someone had burgled his house.

= His house \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Students will organise the party themselves.

= The party \_\_\_\_\_ by students themselves.

7. Clare didn't write that note.

= That note \_\_\_\_\_ by Clare.

8. Someone is painting our classroom.

= Our classroom \_\_\_\_\_ painted.

9. People saw a meteorite over the North Pole.

= A meteorite \_\_\_\_\_ over the North Pole.

10. The organisers will divide the prize money between the two winners.

= The prize money \_\_\_\_\_ between the two winners.

**Discussion**

Think of a film that you like. When and where was it made? Was it based on a true story or a book?



Watch the video on our website and read the conversation between Sophie and Lucia. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of past simple irregular verbs.


**Grammar  
Snacks**

### 1. Check your grammar: true or false – past simple irregular verbs

Are these sentences *True* or *False*?

- |    |   |             |              |
|----|---|-------------|--------------|
| 1. | To form the past simple, we add <i>-ed</i> to the end of regular verbs.                         | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 2. | There are many different forms of irregular verbs in the past simple.                           | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 3. | We use <i>did + not + infinitive</i> to form past simple negatives with all types of verbs.     | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 4. | We use <i>did + subject + infinitive</i> to form past simple questions with all types of verbs. | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 5. | There are clear rules about how to form the past simple for irregular verbs.                    | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 6. | You have to learn all the different irregular verb forms of the past simple.                    | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |

### 2. Check your grammar: multiple choice – past simple irregular verbs

Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- |       |  |                       |
|-------|--|-----------------------|
| 1.    | We _____ about the storm on the news.    | hear<br>heard         |
| <hr/> |  |                       |
| 2.    | They _____ that it was my birthday.      | find out<br>found out |
| <hr/> |  |                       |
| 3.    | The waiter _____ us the menu to look at. | bring<br>brought      |
| <hr/> |  |                       |
| 4.    | I didn't _____ very well last night.     | sleep<br>slept        |
| <hr/> |  |                       |
| 5.    | Did you _____ your coat in the cafe?     | leave<br>left         |
| <hr/> |  |                       |
| 6.    | It was so cold that the pipes _____.     | freeze<br>froze       |

7. She didn't \_\_\_\_\_ us what to do for homework. tell  
told
- 
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ bad about failing the test. feel  
felt

### 3. Check your grammar: gap fill – past simple irregular verbs

Put the irregular verb in the past simple tense to fill the gaps.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) some food for lunch.
2. Who \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) you at the airport?
3. We all \_\_\_\_\_ (have) the same idea.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ (do) you speak to Sophie?
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the weather forecast earlier.
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ (give) us a lift into town.
7. She \_\_\_\_\_ (read) three books in one week!
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a taxi to the hotel.



Watch the video and read the conversation between Sophie and Hakan. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of personal pronouns and possessives.



**Grammar  
Snacks**

### 1. Check your grammar: multiple choice – personal pronouns and possessives

Circle the correct word to complete the sentences.

1. Could **you / her / your** take a message, please?
2. They showed us all **they / their / ours** holiday photos last night.
3. I'm sorry but these seats are **my / their / ours** .
4. Sandy and **I / me / her** are going to the café.
5. Do you want **I / me / my** to turn this off?
6. I saw your sister's paintings yesterday. **She / They / Its** were very good.
7. They've got two babies and they take **they / their / them** everywhere.
8. Let **he / my / him** help you with that.

### 2. Check your grammar: gap fill – personal pronouns and possessives

Complete the gaps with a word from the box.

I	I	me	me	me	mine	you	you
he	She	it	its	we	us	our	

1. That's my brother's cup and this is \_\_\_\_\_. My grandmother gave it to \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Good morning. Can \_\_\_\_\_ help \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Ah, there's Jade's watch. Could \_\_\_\_\_ pass it to \_\_\_\_\_? I'll keep it safe.
4. That poor dog has lost one of \_\_\_\_\_ legs.
5. Look! I've got Poppy's phone number! She gave \_\_\_\_\_ it last night.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ don't mind where \_\_\_\_\_ go but \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't like the beach.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ never lets \_\_\_\_\_ watch TV after 9 p.m.
8. Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ new car? \_\_\_\_\_ is second-hand.

### 3. Check your grammar: gap fill – personal pronouns and possessives

Complete the sentences with a personal pronoun or a possessive adjective.

1. Has Jack left? He has forgotten \_\_\_\_\_ hat.
2. Some of them didn't give the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ homework.
3. I love these earrings! My friend gave \_\_\_\_\_ to me for my birthday.
4. She's probably hungry. Can you offer \_\_\_\_\_ something to eat?
5. When will we get \_\_\_\_\_ exam results?
6. Why are the cats making so much noise? Have you fed \_\_\_\_\_ yet?
7. If anyone phones for me, tell \_\_\_\_\_ I'll call them back.
8. It's not Daisy's! It's \_\_\_\_\_! My mum bought it for me.

#### Discussion

What's the best present you've ever had? What was it and who gave it to you?





Watch the video and read the conversation between Sophie and Neema. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of question words.



**Grammar  
Snacks**

### 1. Check your grammar: gap fill – question words

Complete the gaps with a question word from the box.

What	Where	How	How often
When	Why	Who	whose

- A: \_\_\_\_\_ are you going on holiday?  
B: Next Friday.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ are you going?  
B: Croatia.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ bought the tickets?  
B: My mum did.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ do you go on holiday?  
B: Once every two years.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ don't you go more often?  
B: Because we don't want to.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ do you do the other years?  
B: We relax in the garden and visit friends.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ do you choose your holiday destination?  
B: We use the internet.
- A: And \_\_\_\_\_ idea was it to go to Croatia?  
B: Our neighbours recommended it.

## 2. Check your grammar: multiple choice – question words

Circle the correct sentence.

1.
  - a. What you have for lunch?
  - b. What did you have for lunch?
  - c. What had you for lunch?
  
2.
  - a. Who is that letter from?
  - b. From who is that letter?
  - c. Who is from that letter?
  
3.
  - a. She always sings in the shower?
  - b. Sings she always in the shower?
  - c. Does she always sing in the shower?
  
4.
  - a. Can we go and visit Gran?
  - b. We can go and visit Gran?
  - c. Can go and visit Gran?
  
5.
  - a. Who you bought those boots?
  - b. Who bought you those boots?
  - c. Who did buy you those boots?
  
6.
  - a. Do you go to the cinema how often?
  - b. How often do you go to the cinema?
  - c. How often you go to the cinema?
  
7.
  - a. What did he in Germany?
  - b. What he did in Germany?
  - c. What did he do in Germany?
  
8.
  - a. Would you like another piece of cake?
  - b. Do you would like another piece of cake?
  - c. Do you like another piece of cake?

### 3. Check your grammar: ordering – question words

Write the words in the correct order to make questions.

1. to Who were you ? talking

.....

2. are at they ? looking What

.....

3. music ? down the you Could turn

.....

4. is for What homework the today ?

.....

5. Who that photo ? took

.....

6. match time does ? the start What

.....

7. you How clean often ? do teeth your

.....

8. penguins bears Why don't ? polar eat

.....

#### Discussion

What questions do you like to ask people when you first meet them?



Watch the video on our website and read the conversation between Sophie and Anita. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of relative clauses.



**Grammar  
Snacks**

### 1. Check your grammar: true or false

Circle *True* or *False* for these sentences.

- |    |  |             |              |
|----|--|-------------|--------------|
| 1. | Relative clauses describe or give extra information about something.   | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 2. | We use relative pronouns like <i>which</i> , <i>that</i> , <i>who</i> and <i>where</i> at the beginning of relative clauses. | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 3. | The information in relative clauses is always essential for understanding the sentence.                                      | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 4. | Some relative clauses give additional information which is not essential for understanding.                                  | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 5. | Relative clauses that give additional information are called 'defining'.   | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 6. | Relative clauses are always in the middle of a sentence.   | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 7. | We can use exactly the same relative pronouns in defining and non-defining relative clauses.                                 | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 8. | The punctuation is different for defining and non-defining clauses.  | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |

### 2. Check your grammar: gap fill

Write a relative pronoun (*that*, *which*, *who*, *where*, *when* or *whose*) to fill each gap.

- That's the house \_\_\_\_\_ I was born.
- My Auntie Ella, \_\_\_\_\_ is a journalist, is coming to visit next week.
- People \_\_\_\_\_ like outdoor activities will love our holidays.
- The early 1960s, \_\_\_\_\_ the Beatles first started, was a very exciting time in popular culture.
- My essay on Shakespeare, \_\_\_\_\_ I found quite difficult, got a really good mark in the end.

## Grammar videos: Relative clauses – exercises

6. The Mayans, \_\_\_\_\_ lived in Central America, built many stunning temples.
7. That's the girl \_\_\_\_\_ brother is in your class.
8. The snake \_\_\_\_\_ was in the garden last week belongs to our next-door neighbour.

### 3. Check your grammar: error correction

Correct the mistakes with relative clauses or punctuation and write the sentences on the line below.

1. The Glastonbury Festival, which is held every June is the largest music festival in the world.

.....

2. I always get on well with people, who love animals.

.....

3. Let's go to the café which they sell pizza.

.....

4. Queensland and Victoria, that are Australian states, are named after Queen Victoria.

.....

5. I've got to text that boy which I was telling you about.

.....

6. That's the restaurant that my father met my mother.

.....

7. I've got a message from Thomas, who skis I'm going to borrow.

.....

8. At midnight when the fireworks start, the band is going to start playing.

.....

#### Discussion

Do people still follow traditions or use old ways of doing things where you live? What do they do?



Watch the video and read the conversation between Sophie and Hakan. Then do these exercises to check your understanding of *some*, *any*, *every* and *no*.



**Grammar  
Snacks**

### 1. Check your grammar: grouping – some, any, every and no

Write the phrases in the correct group.

I really don't like some of his songs.	You won't find anywhere like this.	I'd like some advice.	Anything is better than this!
There was nothing he could do.	There was nobody at the door.	She can go anywhere she wants.	Anyone can answer that question!

Zero	Limited	Unlimited

### 2. Check your grammar: gap fill – some, any, every and no

Complete the gaps with a word.

- I think the house was empty because \_\_\_\_\_ one answered the door.
- Could I have \_\_\_\_\_ grapes, please? Just a few.  
A: "\_\_\_\_\_ else, sir?"
- B: "No, thank you, that's everything."
- I wish I knew \_\_\_\_\_ who could help me with this.

5. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ that sells sunglasses in the shopping centre. Try the High Street.
- A: "Where would you like to go on holiday?"
6. B: "\_\_\_\_\_ with sun and a beach. I want a tan!"
7. Has \_\_\_\_\_ seen my purse?
8. Mum! There's \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone for you!

### 3. Check your grammar: gap fill – some, any, every and no

Complete the gaps with a word from the box.

anyone	nothing	None	anywhere
some	Nobody	somewhere	any

1. A: "Can I have a biscuit?"  
B: "Sorry, there aren't \_\_\_\_\_ left."
2. She has an allergy which means she can't eat \_\_\_\_\_ types of cheese, but there are a few kinds that are OK.
3. I've never met \_\_\_\_\_ like her before.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ of us knew the answer. We didn't have a clue!
5. Can we sit \_\_\_\_\_ quieter, please? It's very noisy in here.
6. You can't buy real pizza \_\_\_\_\_ in this town!
7. \_\_\_\_\_ knows the exact date this planet was created.
8. There's \_\_\_\_\_ good on TV tonight, so we're going to the cinema.

**Writing skills practice: A postcard from Scotland – exercises**

Look at the postcard and do the exercises to practise and improve your writing skills.

**Preparation**

Write the sentences in the correct groups.

The food is disgusting.	The people are very friendly.	We're having a great holiday.
The countryside is beautiful.	The weather is awful.	It rains almost every day.
The hotel is in a convenient location.	The hotel staff are not helpful.	

Good	Bad

Hi Eric!

We're having a great holiday here in Scotland. We're staying in a hotel in the centre of Edinburgh. It's got a swimming pool but it's too cold to swim! There are lots of things to do. The people are very friendly, but sometimes I can't understand them.

Last week we went to Loch Ness but we didn't see the monster, unfortunately. Scotland is very beautiful but the weather is awful. It's very cold and windy and it rains every day!

Are you having a good holiday at the beach?

See you soon

Jenny x

Affix stamp here

---

Eric Johnson

---


12 Lake Avenue

---

Brighton

---

BN1 2AQ



### Top Tips for writing

Use contractions in informal writing.

**We are** having a great holiday = **We're** having a great holiday

**It has got** a swimming pool = **It's got** a swimming pool

**It is** very cold and windy = **It's** very cold and windy



**1. Check your understanding: true or false**

Circle *True* or *False* for these sentences.

- |    |  |             |              |
|----|--|-------------|--------------|
| 1. | Jenny is on holiday in the Scottish city of Edinburgh.   | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 2. | Eric is on holiday on a beach.                           | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 3. | Jenny is not having a good holiday.                      | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 4. | The weather is beautiful in Scotland.                    | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 5. | Jenny went swimming in the hotel.                        | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 6. | Jenny likes the people in Scotland.                      | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 7. | Jenny is going to Loch Ness to see the monster tomorrow. | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 8. | The hotel is in a good location.                         | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |

**2. Check your writing: contractions**

Rewrite the sentences using contractions.

- It is so hot and sunny at the beach today.  
.....
- The hotel is very big and it has got a games room.  
.....
- Tomorrow, we are going on a tour of the old castle.  
.....
- They are not meeting us for dinner.  
.....
- We could not go to the museum yesterday because it was closed.  
.....
- I did not bring my sunglasses.  
.....
- I cannot understand the words on the menu.  
.....
- She is the tour guide for today's trip.  
.....

**Discussion**

Have you ever sent a postcard or e-card when on holiday? Would you like to visit Scotland?

**Writing skills practice: An email about sports – exercises**

Look at the email and do the exercises to practise and improve your writing skills.

**Preparation**

Write the names of the sports in the boxes below the picture.

volleyball	football / soccer	ice hockey	rugby
hockey	American football	Australian rules football	surfing
			
			

To: brett.walker149@mailme.ca

Cc:

Subject: Re: sports

Insert: Attachments Photos Vide-

Tahoma 10 B I U

① Dear Brett

② Thanks for your email. You do lots of sports at school in Canada. I'd love to play ice hockey one day.

③ We do lots of sports at our school too. We've got a swimming pool at school and our class go swimming every Wednesday. We also play tennis, volleyball and football, but football in Australia is different to soccer. You can touch the ball with your hands!

④ There are lots of after-school sports clubs in Australia too. I go to a surfing club after school on Tuesdays and Thursdays. We go to the beach and learn how to surf. It's great fun! Can you surf in your country?

⑤ Write soon

Rob

Send Save Cancel

## Top Tips for writing

1. *Begin your email 'Dear' + name.*
2. *Begin your email with thanks or the reason you are writing.*
3. *This paragraph has got one idea.*
4. *This paragraph has got another idea.*
5. *End your email 'Write soon' + your name.*

### 1. Check your understanding: true or false

Circle *True* or *False* for these sentences.

- |    |   |             |              |
|----|---|-------------|--------------|
| 1. | Rob is from Canada.                                       | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 2. | Rob wants to try ice hockey.                              | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 3. | There is a swimming pool at Rob's school.                 | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 4. | Rob goes swimming on Tuesday and Thursday afternoons.     | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 5. | Rob thinks football in Australia and soccer are the same. | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 6. | Rob often goes to the beach.                              | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |

### 2. Check your writing: paragraphs

Rewrite this email and put it into paragraphs like Rob's email above. (1: *Begin the email.* 2: *Reason for writing.* 3: *First main idea.* 4: *Second main idea.* 5: *End the email*)

Dear Rob Great to hear from you! Let me tell you about sports at school in Canada. At school we play a lot of team sports like soccer, baseball and basketball. My favourite team sport is basketball. I'm good at it because I'm very tall. I play basketball two days a week on Wednesdays and Fridays. I also go swimming at school, but I don't really like swimming. It's boring! We do lots of sports after school in Canada. I live in Calgary and it's very cold in winter, so we do lots of winter sports like ice hockey, snowboarding and skiing. It always snows a lot in winter and I go skiing every weekend. It's great fun! I play ice hockey for my town, in the under 14s team. Last week I scored a goal! Write soon and tell me about sports in Australia. Brett



Look at the information about a school trip and do the exercises to improve your writing skills.

### Preparation

Fill the gaps with the correct word from the box.

centre

trip

work

weekend

Museum

1. We're going on a school \_\_\_\_\_.
2. We're going to the city \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The trip is next \_\_\_\_\_.
4. We're going to the Science and Technology \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Oh no! The museum is closed for building \_\_\_\_\_.

# School trip



Park School

Join us on a school trip to Cardiff on Saturday 13<sup>th</sup> May.

We will spend the morning in the city centre. For lunch, we'll have a picnic in the park. In the afternoon, we will visit the Science and Technology Museum.

Price: £20

Meet in the school car park at 8:00 am. Please arrive on time. We will return to the school at 5:30 pm.



Park School

10 Park Lane

Newport

Tel: 01633 149987

## IMPORTANT: SCHOOL TRIP UPDATE

Dear Students,

We hope you can come on our school trip next weekend. Unfortunately, the Science and Technology Museum is closed for building work on Saturday, but we have got tickets for St Fagans National History Museum instead. The good news is that entry is free so the trip will now cost £10 each.

Arrival and departure times are the same.



Mr Stuart Noble

Head Teacher

## Top Tips for writing

When you need to write notes from a text, underline the important information first. Then make short, clear notes.



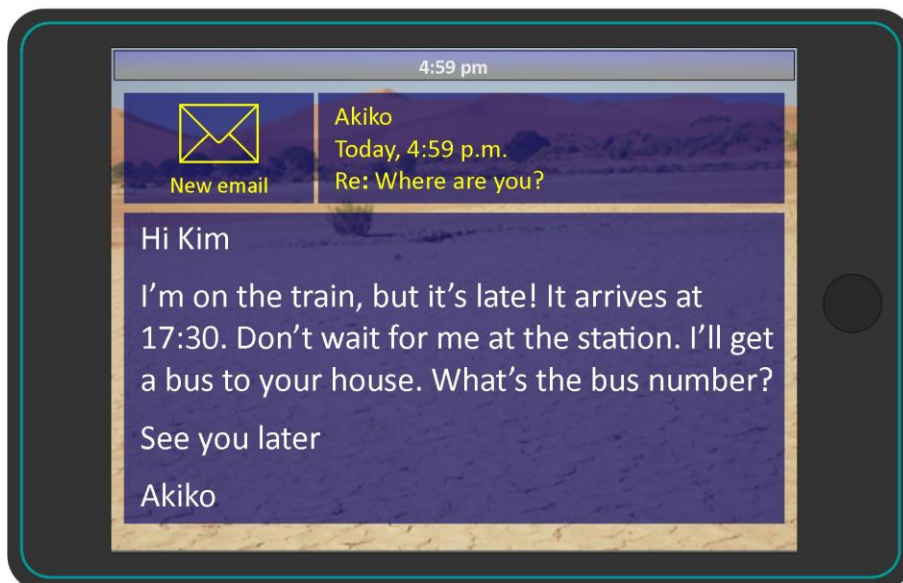
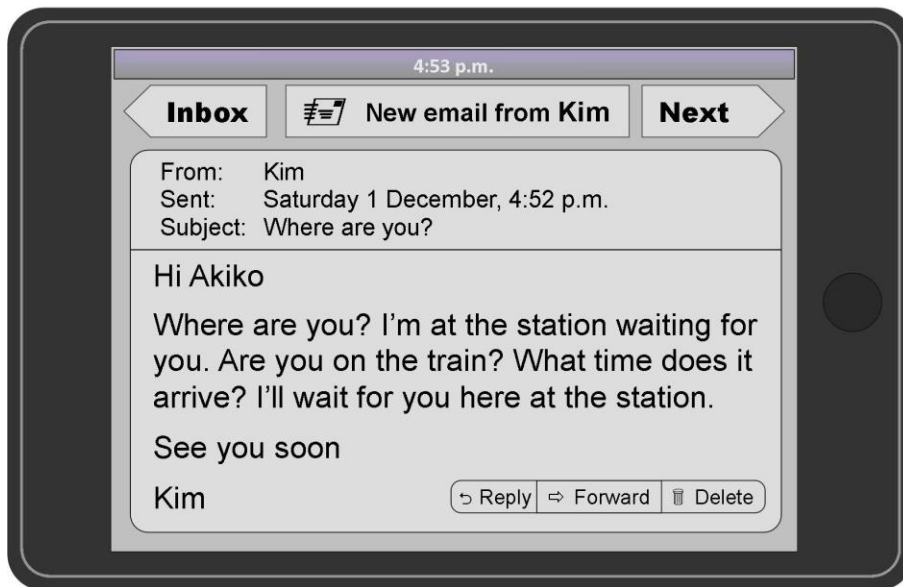
**Writing skills practice: Trains and travel – exercises**

Look at the two messages and do the exercises to improve your message writing skills.

**Preparation**

Write the words in the correct order to make sentences. Start each sentence with a capital letter.

1. you where are ? .....  
.....
2. home at are ? you .....  
.....
3. no, school at . I'm .....  
.....
4. train ? arrive what does the time .....  
.....
5. what's bus ? the number .....  
.....
6. see I'll soon . you .....  
.....





### 1. Check your understanding: multiple choice

Circle the correct person to complete these sentences.

1. Akiko / Kim will take a bus.
2. Akiko / Kim is waiting.
3. Akiko / Kim is at the train station.
4. Akiko / Kim asks three questions.
5. Akiko / Kim is on the train.
6. Akiko / Kim is late.

### 2. Check your writing: ordering

Write numbers (1-5) to put the two emails in order.

#### Email 1

..... See you soon  
..... Hi Akiko  
..... Where are you? I'm at the station waiting for you.  
..... Kim  
..... Are you on the train? What time does it arrive? I'll wait for you here at the station.

#### Email 2

..... I'm on the train, but it's late!  
..... See you later  
..... Akiko  
..... Hi Kim  
..... Don't wait for me at the station. I'll get a bus to your house. What's the bus number?

### 3. Check your writing: replying to an email

Read Gareth's email. Then write an email to reply to him. Use the information below to answer Gareth's questions. Don't forget to use correct punctuation in your sentences.

Hi Jon,

Where are you? What time do you arrive? Do you want to meet me at my house or the bus station?

See you soon,

Gareth

1. Start the email to Gareth. Use 2 words.

.....

2. Where are you? – *bus*

.....

3. What time do you arrive? – *8:30*

.....

4. Do you want to meet me at my house or the bus station? – *bus station*

.....

5. Finish the email. Use 3 words.

.....

6. Jon

.....

#### Discussion

Do you use trains in your town or city?

Do you like travelling by train?

Do you often go to your friends' houses?

What forms of transport do you take when you go and visit your friends?

Look at the email and do the exercises to practise and improve your writing skills.

### Preparation

Correct and write these sentences on the line.

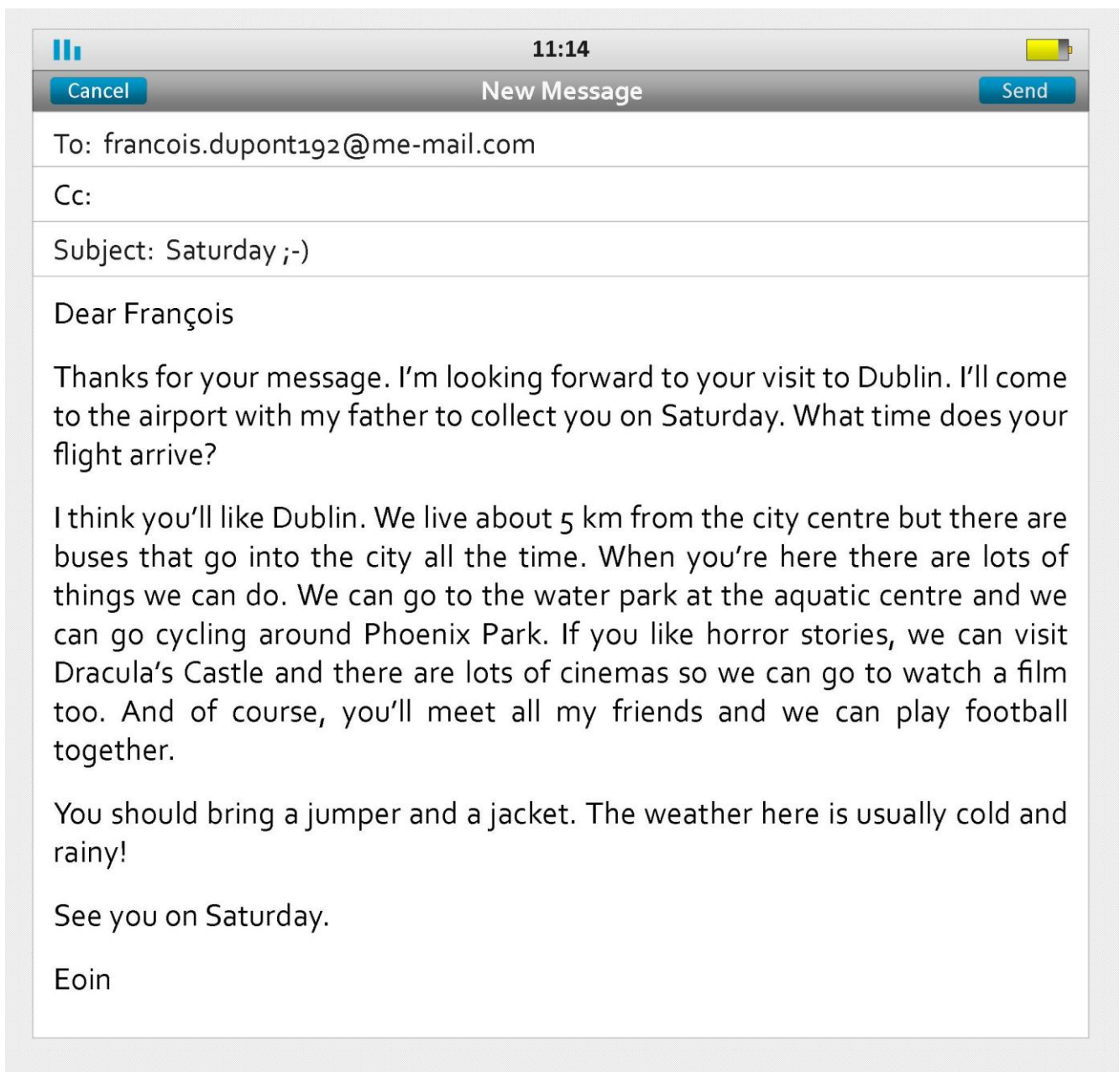
1. I send 25 massages every day.
2. His favorit sport is teenis.
3. Can I borow your bycicle?
4. The whether in my town is usually wet and windy.

.....

.....

.....

.....



The screenshot shows an email interface with a status bar at the top displaying signal strength, the time 11:14, and a battery icon. Below the status bar is a header with 'Cancel' on the left, 'New Message' in the center, and 'Send' on the right. The email content is as follows:

To: francois.dupont192@me-mail.com

Cc:

Subject: Saturday ;-)

Dear François

Thanks for your message. I'm looking forward to your visit to Dublin. I'll come to the airport with my father to collect you on Saturday. What time does your flight arrive?

I think you'll like Dublin. We live about 5 km from the city centre but there are buses that go into the city all the time. When you're here there are lots of things we can do. We can go to the water park at the aquatic centre and we can go cycling around Phoenix Park. If you like horror stories, we can visit Dracula's Castle and there are lots of cinemas so we can go to watch a film too. And of course, you'll meet all my friends and we can play football together.

You should bring a jumper and a jacket. The weather here is usually cold and rainy!

See you on Saturday.

Eoin

## 1. Check your understanding: true or false

Circle *True* or *False* for these sentences.

- |    |  |             |              |
|----|--|-------------|--------------|
| 1. | Eoin will go to the airport alone to meet François.                | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 2. | Eoin is meeting François on the weekend.                           | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 3. | Eoin lives in the centre of Dublin.                                | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 4. | There are lots of places to visit and many things to do in Dublin. | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 5. | Eoin and his friends like to play sports.                          | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |
| 6. | Dublin is a good place to visit if you like scary movies.          | <i>True</i> | <i>False</i> |

## 2. Check your writing: spelling

Read François's reply and correct his spelling mistakes.

Dear Eoin

Thanks for your mesage. I'm really looking forward to my visite to Dublin. My aerplane arrives at 15:30.

I would like to go to the water park and Phoenix Park. Is it posible to borrow a bycicle? I'm not very intrested in Dracula but I like films so we can go to the cinema too. I want to meet your frends and your family. I love footbal. It's my favorite sport so we can play every day if you want!

See you on Saturday.

François

- Thanks for your mesage.  
.....
- I'm really looking forward to my visite to Dublin.  
.....
- My aerplane arrives at 15:30.  
.....
- Is it posible to borrow a bycicle?  
.....

5. I'm not very intrested in Dracula but I like films so we can go to the cinema too.

.....

6. I want to meet your frends and your familly.

.....

7. I love footbal.

.....

8. It's my favorite sport so we can play every day if you want!

.....

### Discussion

Do you often make spelling mistakes?

What words do you often spell incorrectly?



# OPTIMISE A2

RESOURCES



# OPTIMISE A2

EVERY DAY  
ENGLISH

### Make plans for the weekend

**Everyday life**

**1** Look at the photos and answer the questions.

Where are the girls and what are they doing?  
 What do you think they are having a conversation about?



\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Everyday vocabulary**

**2** Look at the sports in the box and answer the questions.

badminton | basketball | beach volleyball  
 chess | football | golf | rugby | tennis  
 water polo

Which sports do people usually play:

- a) with a ball?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- b) in a team?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- c) on a court?  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**3** Add any other sports you know to your answers in Exercise 2.

**Reading**

**4** Read the messages. How many ideas does Conxi give to Teresa?

*Conxi wants to do something on Saturday. She's texting Teresa to organise something.*

**Conxi:** Hi Teresa. Are you doing anything at the weekend?

**Teresa:** I'm free on Saturday.

**Conxi:** Great. What shall we do?

**Teresa:** What would you like to do?

**Conxi:** How about hanging out in the park?

**Teresa:** That sounds boring. Why don't we watch a basketball match?

**Conxi:** Good idea! Wait – I'm checking the internet. There's a basketball match on at 3 o'clock in the sports centre.

**Teresa:** I like the sound of that. How much is it?

**Conxi:** The tickets are £30 each. A bit expensive. Here's another idea – a chess competition in the library.

**Teresa:** No way!!! Is there anything else that looks interesting?

**Conxi:** Do you like cycling?

**Teresa:** Cycling? My dad loves cycling but I don't! Next!

**Conxi:** There's a beach volleyball tournament. It starts at 10 o'clock.

**Teresa:** That sounds interesting. Is it expensive to watch?

**Conxi:** No, it's free!

**Teresa:** Let's do that!

**Conxi:** OK. See you then.



**5 Read and answer. Then read again and check.**

- 1 How many of Conxi's ideas does Teresa like?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Where does Conxi get some of her ideas?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Does Conxi like any of Teresa's ideas?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Why don't they watch the basketball match?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 What do they decide to do?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 How much does the beach volleyball tournament cost?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**EVERYDAY ENGLISH TOOLKIT**

**Making plans for the weekend**

Look at the expressions from the dialogue. Who says each one: Conxi or Teresa?

- That sounds boring. \_\_\_\_\_
- I like the sound of that. \_\_\_\_\_
- What shall we do (on Saturday)? \_\_\_\_\_
- How about hanging out in the park? \_\_\_\_\_
- Let's do that! \_\_\_\_\_

Write each expression under the correct heading:

**Asking for an idea**

\_\_\_\_\_

**Giving a possible idea**

\_\_\_\_\_

**Responding positively to an idea**

\_\_\_\_\_

**Responding negatively to an idea**

\_\_\_\_\_

**Deciding what to do**

\_\_\_\_\_

**Your turn!**

**6 Work in pairs. One of you is Student A and the other is Student B. You want to do something at the weekend. Follow the steps below and have a text conversation using an app or social networking site, or by writing down your conversation. Use the expressions in the *Everyday English toolkit*.**

**Student A:**

Ask your partner for an idea.

**Student B:**

Choose three sports from the Everyday Vocabulary or invent your own. Give your ideas to Student A.

**Student A:**

Listen to Student B's ideas and respond positively or negatively. Tell Student B your ideas.

**Student B:**

Listen to Student A's ideas and respond positively or negatively.

**Students A and B:**

Decide what to do.

### Ask about travel information

Everyday life

**1** Look at the photo and answer the questions.

Where is this person and what is she doing?  
In your opinion, what is the best way to travel?



Everyday vocabulary

**2** Look at the words in the box. Write the words in the correct column of the table.

arrivals | departures | flight | gate  
journey | lounge | platform | sleeper car  
station | terminal | track | waiting room

train travel	air travel	both

**3** Add any other words you know to the categories in Exercise 2.

Dialogue

**4** Listen to the dialogue. What type of transport does Anna decide to take?

*Anna is visiting the UK. She wants to take a trip from London to Paris and is talking to her friend, Martin, about her plans.*

**Anna:** I'd like to go to Paris. What's the best way to get there from here?

**Martin:** (1) \_\_\_\_

**Anna:** Oh! (2) \_\_\_\_

**Martin:** No, not from London. Here, let's look up the timetables on my tablet.

**Anna:** Where does the train go from?

**Martin:** From St Pancras Station. Look, there's a train that leaves at 14:22.

**Anna:** So, that's 22 minutes past two in the afternoon. And when does it arrive in Paris?

**Martin:** It arrives at the Gare du Nord at 17:57 – five fifty-seven. Just over two and a half hours later.

**Anna:** (3) \_\_\_\_ Do I have to change?

**Martin:** No, it's direct. I think there's one stop, but you don't need to change.

**Anna:** Do I need to reserve a seat?

**Martin:** Yes, all seats are booked in advance.

**Anna:** It's usually faster to go by plane. How long does it take from here?

**Martin:** Well, from London to Paris (4) \_\_\_\_ But first you need to get to Heathrow Airport – it's just outside London – and then you need to get into the centre of Paris from the airport there, so you can add another two or three hours. (5) \_\_\_\_ And it's more expensive!

**Anna:** (6) \_\_\_\_

**5** Read and complete the dialogue with the phrases (a-f). Then listen again and check.

- a) OK. That's sorted. I'm going by train!
- b) By train. I would go with Eurostar.
- c) Isn't it quicker to fly?
- d) Your total travelling time is around four hours.
- e) the flight only takes an hour.
- f) Really? Two and a half hours? That's amazing.

## EVERYDAY ENGLISH TOOLKIT

## Asking about travel information

Look at the expressions from the dialogue. Who says each one: Anna or Martin? Write A or M.

How could you say each thing in a different way?

Where does the train go from? \_\_\_\_\_

There's a train that leaves at 14:22. \_\_\_\_\_

Do I have to change? \_\_\_\_\_

No, it's direct. \_\_\_\_\_

I think there's one stop. \_\_\_\_\_

Do I need to reserve a seat? \_\_\_\_\_

Yes, all seats are booked in advance. \_\_\_\_\_

## Your turn!

- 6** Work in pairs. You are deciding how to travel from London to Edinburgh. One of you is the traveller, and the other is a friend. Follow the steps below and role play a conversation. Then change roles. Use the expressions in the *Everyday English toolkit*.

**Traveller:**

Choose the destination below. Ask your friend questions and listen to their advice on the best way to travel.

**Friend:**

Look at the information below. Respond to the traveller's questions and give advice on the best way to travel.

**London to Edinburgh**

**By train:** £68 one way

**London Kings Cross dep:** 13:20;

**Edinburgh arr:** 18.35

**Journey time:** 5 hours 15 minutes  
1 change (at York)

**By plane:** £110 one way

Heathrow Airport to Edinburgh Airport

**Journey time:** 1 hour 10 minutes  
Direct flight

## Describe a technology problem and ask for help

### Everyday life

- 1** Look at the photo and answer the questions.

Where are the people and what are they doing?  
What do you think the problem is?



### Everyday vocabulary

- 2** Choose an item from Box A. Then find words in Box B which can explain how the item works. Some words can be used more than once.

**A** digital camera | printer  
smartphone | tablet | TV

**B** cable | channel | click | connect  
plug in | power button | remote control  
signal | wi-fi | wireless router

---



---



---



---

- 3** Add any other items you know to boxes A and B.

**Box A:**

---

**Box B:**

---

### Dialogue

- 4** 02 Listen to the dialogue. What information does Elena need to get online?

*Elena is visiting the UK. She wants to use her tablet to check her emails, but there's a problem.*

**Elena:** Oh, Gus. (1) \_\_\_\_

**Gus:** What's up?

**Elena:** I want to check my emails. (2) \_\_\_\_

**Gus:** Sure. OK. So, first, you need to select your network. Open 'Settings' and then click on 'wi-fi'. Like this – it's not that difficult.

**Elena:** Oh, nothing's coming up.

**Gus:** What?

**Elena:** It isn't showing any networks.

**Gus:** Oh, let me see. Hmm. (3) \_\_\_\_ Can you check it, Elena? It's that grey box over there. Are the lights on?

**Elena:** No, they're not. (4) \_\_\_\_ I don't think it's connected.

**Gus:** Let me see. Oh, yes. (5) \_\_\_\_ I'll plug it back in. There! Press the power button and wait for a moment. OK. It's working now.

**Elena:** Shall I try again? I'm in 'Settings'.

**Gus:** Yes, now, select the network name. It's 'homenetwork6'.

**Elena:** OK. There it is. Oh, (6) \_\_\_\_ It's asking me for a password.

**Gus:** It's 'yellow99'.

**Elena:** Yellow99. There! Oh, I've got lots of emails! Thank you, Gus.

**Gus:** No problem.

- 5** 02 Read and complete the dialogue with the phrases (a-f). Then listen again and check.

- Let's check the wi-fi router.
- The cable's come out.
- Can you show me how to get online?
- Can you help me with something?
- I still can't get online.
- It isn't working.

**EVERYDAY ENGLISH TOOLKIT**

Describing a problem with technology and asking for help

Look at the expressions from the dialogue. Who says each expression, Elena or Gus? Write E or G.

Which expressions are asking for help and which are describing a problem? Write *Asking for help* or *Describing a problem*.

Can you help me with something? \_\_\_\_\_

Can you show me how to (get online)? \_\_\_\_\_

Nothing's coming up. \_\_\_\_\_

It isn't (showing any networks). \_\_\_\_\_

It isn't working. \_\_\_\_\_

I don't think it's (connected). \_\_\_\_\_

The (cable's) come out. \_\_\_\_\_

I still can't (get online). \_\_\_\_\_

**Your turn!**

**6** Work in pairs. One of you is having problems with technology and the other is trying to help. Follow the steps below and role play a conversation. Then change roles. Use the expressions in the *Everyday English toolkit*.

**Student A:**

Look at Box A in Exercise 2 and choose an item. Describe a problem with the item and ask Student B for help.

**Student B:**

Listen to Student A's problem and try to help. Use the words in Box B if necessary.

## Enrol for a class

### Everyday life

- 1** Look at the photo and answer the questions.

Where are the people and what are they doing?  
What kind of after-school classes can you do at your school?



### Everyday vocabulary

- 2** Look at the free-time activities in the box and answer the questions.

art | ballet | crafts | drama | football  
gymnastics | karate | model-making  
music | street dance | swimming | tennis

Which activities are:

a sports? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

b dance? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

c artistic? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 3** Add any other free-time activities you know to the lists in Exercise 2.

### Dialogue

- 4** 03 Listen to the dialogue. Which activity does Petra decide to do?

*Petra wants to do an after-school activity. She is in the school office.*

- Petra:** Hello. I'd like to sign up for an after-school activity, please.
- Secretary:** Yes, of course. (1) \_\_\_\_ I'll just get a registration form. OK, what's your name?
- Petra:** Petra James.
- Secretary:** And which year are you in, Petra?
- Petra:** Year 8.
- Secretary:** Who's your class teacher?
- Petra:** Mrs Fenn.
- Secretary:** All right. Thank you. Now, which activity would you like to do?
- Petra:** I'd like to take the model-making class, please.
- Secretary:** OK. Oh, sorry, that class is full. (2) \_\_\_\_ Crafts? Art?
- Petra:** Is the art class full?
- Secretary:** Let me check. No, it isn't. (3) \_\_\_\_
- Petra:** Yes, please.
- Secretary:** OK. (4) \_\_\_\_ That's for the whole term.
- Petra:** (5) \_\_\_\_
- Secretary:** Thank you.
- Petra:** When does the class start?
- Secretary:** Next week. It's on Tuesday. 3 o'clock to 5 o'clock. Do you have an email address?
- Petra:** Yes, (6) \_\_\_\_
- Secretary:** Thanks. That's all done. I'll send you an email with details of the class.

- 5** 03 Read and complete the dialogue with the phrases (a-f). Then listen again and check.

- a) Do you want to do anything else?  
b) it's petraj@gmail.com.  
c) One moment, please.  
d) Here you are.  
e) Do you want to do that?  
f) That's £24, please.

**EVERYDAY ENGLISH TOOLKIT****Answering questions to enrol for a class**

Look at the expressions from the dialogue. Who says each one, Petra or the secretary? Write P or S.

- What's your name? \_\_\_\_\_
- Which year are you in? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who's your class teacher? \_\_\_\_\_
- Which activity would you like to do? \_\_\_\_\_
- I'd like to take the model-making class, please. \_\_\_\_\_
- Is the art class full? \_\_\_\_\_
- When does the class start? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you have an email address? \_\_\_\_\_

**Your turn!**

- 6** Work in pairs. You are in the school office. One of you is a student, and the other is the office secretary. Follow the steps below and role play a conversation. Then change roles. Use the expressions in the *Everyday English toolkit*.

**Student:**

Look at the list of activities in Exercise 2 and decide which one you want to do. Respond to the questions with your personal details.

**Secretary:**

Ask the student questions and complete the registration form below. Decide if some activities are full and suggest alternatives.

### Registration form: after-school activities

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Year: \_\_\_\_\_

Class teacher: \_\_\_\_\_

Activity: \_\_\_\_\_

Email address: \_\_\_\_\_

### Describe fitness and health habits

Everyday life

- 1** Look at the photo and answer the questions.  
 Where are the people and what are they doing?  
 What kinds of machines are they using?



Everyday vocabulary

- 2** Look at the activities in the box. Write them in the correct column in the table.

cross-training | football | ice skating  
 rowing | skiing | spinning | swimming  
 running | weight-lifting

in a gym	outdoors	both

- 3** Add any other activities you know to the table in Exercise 2.

Dialogue

- 4** 04 Listen to the dialogue. Which exercise does Enrique decide to do first?

*Enrique is visiting the UK. Today he's visiting a gym and discussing his level of fitness with a trainer.*

**Trainer:** Hi, there. I'm Mike, one of the trainers.

**Enrique:** Hi. I'm Enrique.

**Trainer:** OK, Enrique. (1) \_\_\_\_

**Enrique:** I think I'm quite fit. I train at home every day. I play football twice a week too.

**Trainer:** That's great. You're in pretty good shape, then! (2) \_\_\_\_ And how much do you weigh?

**Enrique:** I don't know. I'm average height and weight, I think.

**Trainer:** Are you allergic to anything? Like nuts, any foods, medications, that kind of thing?

**Enrique:** I'm allergic to cats. But I don't see any here!

**Trainer:** No, they don't come to this gym! Now, (3) \_\_\_\_

**Enrique:** Yes, it is. In fact, I've never been to a gym before. Can you give me some advice?

**Trainer:** No problem. Let me show you around. OK. This is a treadmill, if you like running. We have rowing machines and cross-trainers, to exercise the heart. (4) \_\_\_\_

**Enrique:** What's that?

**Trainer:** It's group cycling on the cycling machines over there. There's a class in ten minutes, if you're interested. And then for strength, we have weight-lifting. Oh, and (5) \_\_\_\_

**Enrique:** Great. So, er, I think I'll start with some running and then I'd like to try the spinning class.

**Trainer:** Sure. Do you have any injuries?

**Enrique:** No, I'm fine.

**Trainer:** (6) \_\_\_\_

- 5** 04 Read and complete the dialogue with the phrases (a-f). Then listen again and check.

- a) is this your first time here?
- b) the swimming pool is next door.
- c) How tall are you?
- d) Then let's get started.
- e) We also have a spinning class.
- f) How often do you train?



## EVERYDAY ENGLISH TOOLKIT

## Describing fitness habits and your general health

Look at the expressions from the dialogue.

Who says each one: Enrique or the trainer?

Write E or T.

What words could you use to replace the words in brackets and how could you rewrite the other phrases? Write your ideas on the lines.

I think I'm quite (fit). \_\_\_\_\_

I (train) every day. \_\_\_\_\_

I (play football) twice a week too. \_\_\_\_\_

I'm average height and weight. \_\_\_\_\_

Are you allergic to anything? \_\_\_\_\_

I'm allergic to cats. \_\_\_\_\_

Do you have any injuries? \_\_\_\_\_

## Your turn!

- 6** Work in pairs. You are in a gym or sports club. One of you is joining today and the other is the trainer. Follow the steps below and role play a conversation. Then change roles. Use the expressions in the *Everyday English toolkit*.

**Trainer:**

Ask the client questions about his/her level of fitness and general health. Give advice about the machines and activities.

**Client:**

Look at the list of activities in Exercise 2 and decide which ones you want to do. Ask the trainer for advice. Answer the trainer's questions.

**Talk about yourself in an interview**

**Everyday life**

**1** Look at the photo and answer the questions.

Who are the people and what are they doing?  
 What other kinds of activities do people volunteer for?



**Everyday vocabulary**

**2** Look at the words in the box. Write them next to the correct categories.

charity shop | cheerful  
 community project for elderly people | food bank  
 hard-working | helpful | homeless shelter  
 kids club | kind | patient | responsible

Adjectives to describe someone:

---

Things that people volunteer for:

---

**3** Add any other words you know to the lists in Exercise 2.

**Dialogue**

**4** Listen to the dialogue. Does David offer Maria a job?

*David works for a family support charity that organises activities for parents and kids. He's interviewing Maria for a job as a volunteer.*

**David:** So, Maria, (1) \_\_\_\_

**Maria:** Well, I like working with people. It's fun.

**David:** That's good. Have you done anything like this before?

**Maria:** I help at home quite a lot.

**David:** (2) \_\_\_\_

**Maria:** (3) \_\_\_\_ They're ten and seven. I think I'm a responsible person.

**David:** That's great.

**Maria:** And helping people makes me feel good.

**David:** (4) \_\_\_\_ Do you think you can organise people? A group of young kids, for example? Or could you help look after them when their parents need a rest?

**Maria:** (5) \_\_\_\_ I think the most important thing is to be kind and patient. And I'm always happy to play their games!

**David:** Well, you're very cheerful and positive. Maria, (6) \_\_\_\_ We would love you to join us!

**Maria:** Oh, thanks! I'll make sure I do a good job.

**5** Read and complete the dialogue with the phrases (a-f). Then listen again and check.

- a) That's very important. What kinds of things do you do?
- b) why do you want to volunteer for this job?
- c) you're just the sort of person we're looking for.
- d) What do you think you are good at?
- e) Yes, I love children.
- f) I look after my little brothers.

## EVERYDAY ENGLISH TOOLKIT

## Talking about yourself in an interview

Look at the expressions from the dialogue.

Who says each one: David or Maria?

Write D or M.

How could you say each thing in a different way?

I like working with (people). \_\_\_\_\_

Have you done anything like this before? \_\_\_\_\_

I help at home. \_\_\_\_\_

Helping people makes me feel (good). \_\_\_\_\_

Do you think you can organise people? \_\_\_\_\_

I think the most important thing is (to be kind and patient). \_\_\_\_\_

We would love you join to us. \_\_\_\_\_

## Your turn!

- 6** Work in pairs. One of you is the interviewer, and the other is a volunteer. Follow the steps below and role play a conversation. Then change roles. Use the expressions in the *Everyday English toolkit*.

**Volunteer:**

Look at Exercise 2. Choose what you want to volunteer for. Tell the interviewer why you think you would be suitable for the job. Answer the interviewer's questions.

**Interviewer:**

Look at Exercise 2. Decide with the volunteer which organisation they want to work for. Ask questions to find out why the volunteer thinks they would be suitable.



# OPTIMISE A2

CULTURE

**1** In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 How do you spend your time during the summer holidays?
- 2 Look at the infographic. Do you do some of the activities that British teenagers do in their holidays? What different activities do teenagers in your country do?
- 3 Are there any activities on the list that you find surprising?

**2** Read the web page. Find a place or an event where you don't swim.

## TOP TEN SUMMER LEISURE ACTIVITIES FOR UK TEENS

Going out with friends	113 hours
Activities with family	100 hours
Chatting online	95 hours
Napping	84 hours
Watching films	79 hours
Catching up on TV programmes	75 hours
Playing video games	74 hours
Having fun in the local neighbourhood or park	60 hours
Shopping	59 hours
Working part time	58 hours
Doing sport	58 hours



# Here comes summer!

New posts

Follow

Archives

## How do you usually spend your holidays?

Many teenagers get bored during the long summer holidays, but there are a lot of fun ways to enjoy your free time. Let's look at some holiday activities popular with teenagers around the world.



Matsuri means 'festival' in my country and there are lots in the summer. My favourite is the Asakusa Samba Carnival in Tokyo and I usually go with my family every August. It's a very lively and colourful event and attracts about 500,000 spectators each year. There are thousands of dancers wearing beautiful costumes and musicians playing Brazilian samba music in the streets. You can dance with them. The atmosphere is brilliant and everyone is happy. It's my favourite event of the summer!

Hiroko, Japan

Posted 21st February 12:21 ◀ Reply ♥ Like

I always spend the first two weeks of the summer holidays at an activity camp with a friend of mine. Summer camps are very popular in the USA and there are about 11 million kids who attend them each year. They're awesome because you get to make lots of new friends and learn new skills. We go to a really cool camp, about two hours from where we live in Boston. We sleep in cabins in the forest and do all sorts of activities, such as water sports, tennis, cycling, arts and crafts, rock climbing and cookery. There's also a library, a cinema, a small theatre and an indoor swimming pool at the camp for rainy days. You never get bored there!

Daniel, USA

Posted 14th February 11:45 ◀ Reply ♥ Like



Do you know that Spain has more amusement parks than any other country in Europe? During our summer holidays, we often go to the parks with our friends to have fun. I live near Barcelona and love going to Port Aventura, the most popular amusement park in my country, which has four million visitors a year. There's also a water park nearby which is perfect for cooling off during the long hot summer days. And in the city, there's a wonderful amusement park called Tibidabo which is one of the oldest in the world. It opened in 1899 and still has many of the original rides.

Elena, Spain

Posted 17th January 7:47 ◀ Reply ♥ Like

**3** Read the web page again and then choose T (True) or F (False) for the statements below.

- 1 *Matsuri* means 'carnival' in Japanese. T / F
- 2 American summer camps have activities whatever the weather. T / F
- 3 In Spain, you can do water sports at the amusement parks when it's really hot. T / F
- 4 Summer in Japan is a popular time for festivals. T / F
- 5 Going to a summer camp is a tradition for many children in the USA. T / F
- 6 Tibidabo in Barcelona is Spain's most visited amusement park. T / F

**4** Read the sentences and write *festival*, *summer camp* or *amusement park*.

- 1 You don't visit this place for only one day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 This event attracts half a million people.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 One of these attractions is more than a 100 years old.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It's a good place to learn how to do new things.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 This is popular among Spanish teens.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 It only happens once a year.  
\_\_\_\_\_

#### OPTIMISE YOUR CULTURE

**5** In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 What are the benefits of going away to a summer camp during the holidays? Are there summer camps for teenagers in your country? Would you like to go to one? What kind of new skills would you like to learn there?
- 2 Do you think it's important to have a part-time job during the holidays? Why / Why not?

#### PROJECT

**6** Read the notes and prepare for a classroom debate.

- 1 Work in pairs. Look at the statement on the debate card. Do you agree or disagree?
- 2 Look at the points for and against the statement and add two more of your own in each column.

**7** Have a debate. Use your preparation from Exercise 6 to help you.

- 1 Work with another pair. Decide which pair will argue for and which against the debate card statement.
- 2 Have your debate. When you have argued your points, swap roles and debate again.

“ The school holidays are a time to have fun after a busy school year, not about working or studying. ”

#### FOR

- It's important to relax during the holidays.
- It's good to find ways to entertain yourself instead of following a timetable just like at school.
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

#### AGAINST

- You can earn some money if you have a part-time job, or learn some new skills if you choose to study.
- It's a way to fill the long days and weeks of the holidays.
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**1** In pairs, look at the photos and discuss the questions.

- 1 Do you know the food and the festivals?
- 2 In which countries do people eat these special foods?



**2** Read the article about some special foods around the world. Match the photos to the correct countries.

## FOOD CUSTOMS AROUND THE WORLD

Around the world, we associate special foods with special celebrations and occasions. These food customs often started years ago for different traditional and cultural reasons. This article features four countries and explores how and why they celebrate their special occasions with food.

### SCOTLAND

Haggis is a food from Scotland in the UK. People traditionally eat it on 25th January. This is Burns Night, a special day to celebrate Robert Burns, the Scottish poet (1759–1796). Burns wrote a famous poem about haggis, and it is now the custom to eat it in celebration of him. Haggis is a meat pudding made of animal products that people began eating in Scotland hundreds of years ago. On Burns Night, a person playing the bagpipes, a traditional musical instrument, comes into the room and the haggis follows, carried high by a waiter ready for the people to eat. Scottish people who live in other countries enjoy this celebration, too. Last year the UK sent haggis to 28 different countries worldwide.

### INDIA

*Diwali* is the Hindu Festival of Light and it is in October each year. Eighty per cent of India's population is Hindu so *Diwali* is a very big festival. It celebrates *Lakshmi*, the goddess of wealth and prosperity. People light hundreds of small oil lamps in their homes and gardens during the celebration. Food has an important role in this five-day festival, and women start preparing the food about a month before. It is the custom to make the food together as a social activity. One of the most popular foods at *Diwali* is sweets and sweet desserts. *Gulab jamun* is a favourite. These are dough balls flavoured with sugar syrup and spices. They're also very popular at other celebrations like weddings.



### USA

Thanksgiving is the biggest festival in the USA. The first Thanksgiving celebration was in November 1621. The Pilgrims who arrived from England the previous year made a special feast of thanks for their very good harvest and they invited the native Americans to dine with them. The food they ate came from the sea and the land around them, including wild turkey, pumpkin, fish and fruit. Today, turkey is one of the traditional foods that Americans eat each year for this celebration – about 46 million turkeys every Thanksgiving Day in fact!

### CHINA

Chinese New Year is a very important festival and Chinese people around the world celebrate it. Chinese New Year lasts for 16 days and, during this time, people eat special food that will bring good luck for the year ahead. Dumplings or *jiaozi* are one of the most popular Chinese New Year special foods. These are small balls made of meat and vegetables and wrapped in dough. They're popular at this celebration because they look like the pieces of gold that the Chinese used for money hundreds of years ago, and a lot of families serve them at midnight on New Year's Eve for prosperity.

**3 Read the article again and write the foods. Then match to the special occasions (a-d).**

- 1 It's made of animal parts. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 It's made of dough and is sweet to taste. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 It's meat from a type of bird. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 They have meat in them, and sometimes seafood and vegetables, too. \_\_\_\_\_

- a) Chinese New Year \_\_\_\_\_
- b) Burns Night \_\_\_\_\_
- c) Diwali \_\_\_\_\_
- d) Thanksgiving \_\_\_\_\_

**4 Read and match.**

- 1 People in the USA eat turkey \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 People in India eat sweet desserts \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 People in Scotland eat haggis \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 People in China eat dumplings \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 People first celebrated Thanksgiving \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 People celebrate Chinese New Year \_\_\_\_\_

- a) because they believe the food brings luck.
- b) to celebrate an important person from their country.
- c) and light up their homes for this festival.
- d) because it came from the land around them.
- e) for 16 days.
- f) almost 400 years ago.

**OPTIMISE YOUR CULTURE**

**5 In pairs, discuss the questions.**

- 1 What do people eat for celebrations and other special occasions in your country?
- 2 Why do you think these foods are associated with important events in your country?
- 3 Do you think it's important to celebrate important events with traditional foods? How else do you celebrate important events in your country?

**PROJECT**

**6 You are going to make a poster illustrating the food customs of another country. Read the points and prepare your project research.**

- 1 Work in small groups. Choose a country and research the foods that people traditionally eat for celebrations and other special occasions. Find out when it started and why people ate that food.
- 2 In your groups, prepare your poster using the information you have found. Illustrate it with drawings or photos of the foods and write a description of the special occasions using your research notes.

**7 Present your poster to the rest of the class. Explain the food customs of the country and why they celebrate a festival or special occasion with these foods. Then display your poster in the classroom, and read the information from the other groups. Compare the food customs of the different countries with those of your own country.**



- 1 In pairs, discuss the statistics. Do you find any of the information surprising?
- 2 Read the article. What could be a reason to consider it acceptable to wear clothes and accessories made from animal products?

## CLOTHING INDUSTRY FACTS AND FIGURES

- The world's clothing and footwear industry is worth nearly \$3,000 billion.
- China produces and exports more textiles than any other country, with 54% of the world's total production.
- In the USA, the average household spends about \$2,000 on clothing and footwear a year.
- In the UK alone, there is about \$47 billion worth of clothes in people's wardrobes that they have never worn.



The clothing industry today is a global industry, and China manufactures a lot of the textiles used to make the clothes that we wear. The most common textiles for clothing come from three main sources:

1 animal (fur, leather, wool)

2 plant (cotton, bamboo)

3 synthetic (nylon, polyester)

People have used animal products to make clothes for centuries, but nowadays it is much less acceptable to use animal products for clothing.

### Fur

In cold climates, people originally hunted animals for their fur. This still happens in some parts of the world, and in places like Russia and Canada people often wear fur coats to keep warm. But some people buy fur clothing for fashion, too. Fur farming is big business around the world, and 85% of the global industry uses the fur of animals who live and die on fur farms in unpleasant conditions. Fur farms aren't illegal in many places, and in Europe there are 6,000 of them, mainly in Denmark, Finland and Norway. The UK banned fur farming in 2003, but it can still import fur from other countries, like China, which is the largest exporter of fur in the world. To protect animals, however, the fake fur industry has grown rapidly in recent years and is now worth more than \$250 million. This is a much more ethical product, costs less and the fur looks real, too.



Fake fur can look like real fur

skins to Europe each year to use in the clothing industry. Fortunately, there are many fashion brands who choose not to use animal skins to make leather products, and use fake skins instead which are made from synthetic materials.

### Wool

Most of the woollen clothes we wear come from sheep, and this is generally harmless to the animal as we need to shear them each spring to remove their thick winter coats. There are some vegans, however, who choose not to wear wool as it is a product that comes from an animal. Australia and New Zealand are large producers of wool, with about 36% of global wool production and more than 100 million sheep in total in the two countries.



### Leather

We wear many accessories made of leather, such as shoes, belts, jewellery and handbags. The leather is usually from animals such as cows, and it is a by-product of the meat industry. For this reason, some people think that this is acceptable. But some countries use the skins of some exotic and endangered animals, such as crocodiles, snakes and tortoises, to make these accessories. This is both cruel and careless, and often illegal. Despite this, a crocodile farm in South Africa sends about 5,000 crocodile



As long as we are careful in choosing the clothes and accessories we wear, we can avoid buying products that harm animals.



### 3 Read the article again and choose the best answer.

- 1 It is culturally acceptable for countries with cold climates to wear clothes made from **leather** / **fur**.
- 2 Some European countries like **Denmark** / **the UK** have a large fur farming industry.
- 3 The clothing industry sometimes uses **sheep** / **crocodile** skin to make leather accessories like belts.
- 4 Companies make fake clothing products from **synthetic** / **plant** materials.
- 5 **About a third** / **More than half** of the world's wool comes from Australia and New Zealand.
- 6 It's important to think about the **production** / **protection** of animals when buying clothes and accessories.

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct country or statistic.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ exports more fur than any other country in the world.
- 2 Fur farming hasn't been allowed in \_\_\_\_\_ for more than ten years.
- 3 There are \_\_\_\_\_ legal fur farms in Europe.
- 4 The fake fur industry now has a value of \_\_\_\_\_ globally.
- 5 Europe receives a large number of crocodile skins from \_\_\_\_\_ each year to make accessories.
- 6 Australia and New Zealand are very popular for wool production because they have over \_\_\_\_\_ sheep.

### OPTIMISE YOUR CULTURE

### 5 Work with a partner and discuss the questions.

- 1 What types of clothes and accessories have you bought recently?
- 2 Do you know of any textiles for clothes and accessories that your country produces? Are any of them made from animal products?

### PROJECT

### 6 Read the notes and prepare for a classroom debate.

- 1 Work in pairs. Look at the statement on the debate card. Do you agree or disagree?
- 2 Look at the points for and against the statement and add two more of your own in each column.

### 7 Have a debate. Use your preparation from Exercise 6 to help you.

- 1 Work with another pair. Decide which pair will argue for and which against the debate card statement.
- 2 Have your debate. When you have argued your points, swap roles and debate again.

“ Using animal products for clothes is unnecessary and cruel. ”

#### FOR

- We should respect animals, not exploit them.
- There are lots of other materials we can use for clothes and accessories, such as polyester, cotton, etc.
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

#### AGAINST

- People have farmed animals for thousands of years.
- Some materials, e.g. leather, are a by-product of the meat industry.
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**1** In pairs, look at the infographic and answer the questions.

- 1 What information does the infographic give us?
- 2 Which country has 11 years of compulsory education?
- 3 Which country has six years of compulsory education?

**2** Read the web page about three unusual schools. Does each person like his or her school?



### Compulsory education



Country	Age	Country	Age
Argentina	6-14	Iran	6-12
Australia	6-16	the Netherlands	5-18
Brazil	6-14	Spain	6-16
England	5-18	Sweden	7-16
Hungary	3-16	the US	6-17



Education and schools are different all over the world. Do you think your school is boring? How could it be more interesting? Read about these unusual schools. Which one would you like to go to?

### Vittra International School, Stockholm, Sweden

Do you like the idea of a school where you can use your tablet all day? Then you will like my school! It's the Vittra International School in Stockholm. Technology is at the heart of everything we do in the school: every student has his or her own laptop or tablet, and teachers send feedback and tasks online. We still have to learn subjects like maths, geography and physics, but there are no classrooms; teachers and students move around in groups. It's a bilingual school (Swedish and English) with a strong international perspective. My school aims to give students a strong global awareness and prepare them for the 21<sup>st</sup> century world. I think this type of school will be the future of learning.

Lars, 13

Technology is very important at the Vittra International School



### Mount Isa School of the Air, Queensland, Australia



Lessons are taught by radio at Mount Isa School of the Air

Australia is a very big country. I live on a farm in the state of Queensland in the north-east. My school is Mount Isa School of the Air, but it's four hundred miles away. So how do I go to my classes? The clue is in the name of my school: 'School of the Air'. My school travels to me – through the air! It's a radio school and I use a radio to listen to my lessons. I can talk to other students in the class, as well as our teacher. I can also use my computer to watch lessons, and I've got a webcam so my teacher can see me. Once a year, all the students meet up for a day. In fact, I'm going to see them next week. I really wish I could see them every day!

Cora, 13

### Lumiar School, São Paulo, Brazil

Do you love your school? I love mine! It's the Lumiar School in São Paulo which was opened in 2003 with the aim that 'if you give kids freedom, they will be better educated'.

There are no fixed classes or timetables. We choose projects to work on every term. If we don't want to take part in projects, we can study, play, go online or read books. It's our choice! We don't have to do tests or exams, and we needn't do homework. The teachers work as advisers and will teach us piano, painting, music or anything we are interested in.

Learning English is very important in my school, and a lot of our project work is in English. Communication and collaboration are also important. Students work together on projects and decide how to run the school. It's brilliant!

Gabriela, 14



Students can learn art at Lumiar School

**3 Read the web page again and choose the best answer.**

- 1 At the Vittra International School students
  - a) work on tablets and use books.
  - b) use tablets to do their work.
- 2 Students at the Vittra International School
  - a) have their lessons in classrooms.
  - b) can move around the school.
- 3 Cora doesn't go to school because
  - a) she lives far away from her school.
  - b) she prefers being at home.
- 4 Students at the Mount Isa School of the Air
  - a) do their lessons at home.
  - b) don't have teachers.
- 5 At the Lumiar School, students
  - a) must do projects for homework.
  - b) can study what they like.
- 6 The teachers at the Lumiar School
  - a) need to speak English.
  - b) decide how to run the school.

**4 Read the statements and put a tick (✓) for true, a cross (X) for false or a question mark (?) if not mentioned in the text for each school.**

	Vittra International School	Mount Isa School of the Air	Lumiar School
1 There aren't any classrooms.			
2 The students speak English.			
3 The students decide if they want to go to lessons.			
4 The teachers use computers to teach.			
5 The students don't have to do homework.			
6 The students use computers to study.			

**OPTIMISE YOUR CULTURE****5 In pairs, discuss the questions.**

- 1 How are the three schools different to your school?
- 2 What are the positive and negative things about each school?
- 3 Which school would you like to go to? Why?

**PROJECT****6 You are going to work on a presentation about schools in different parts of the world. Read the questions and prepare your project research.**

- 1 Work in small groups. Choose two countries (one can be your own country) and do some research on the internet to find information about the following:
  - the number of years of compulsory education
  - a typical school (perhaps your own school) for students of your age
  - an unusual school
- 2 Work together and discuss what you found out. Decide how to present your information to the class. This can be a slideshow, a presentation or a poster.

**7 Present your information to the class. Explain the differences between the two countries you chose in education and schools.**

**1** In pairs, look at the information and discuss the questions.

- 1 What are examples of moderate and strenuous exercises?
- 2 How do young people in your country keep fit? What about older people? Think of three examples for each.

**2** Read the texts quickly. Which two texts describe events in which people compete against others?

### GUIDELINES FOR ADULTS AGED 18–64

#### To stay healthy, adults should do:

- at least 150 mins of moderate aerobic activity a week  
OR 75 mins of vigorous aerobic exercise
- strength exercises on two or more days a week to work the major muscles (e.g. legs, back, arms, etc.)



**A**

## BRITISH GRANNY WINS SPANISH TALENT SHOW!

Sarah ‘Paddy’ Jones, a 75-year-old British grandmother, has won first prize in a Spanish TV talent show. In the final, Mrs Jones performed an amazing salsa dance routine with her partner, Nico, who’s 40 years younger than her. The grandmother of seven, who lives in Spain, only took up salsa dancing five years earlier. Paddy, who won prize money of 10,000 euros, says she will keep on dancing as long as she can. She also says dancing has improved her fitness and helped her lose weight.

**B**

## BOKWA

#### What is it?

Bokwa is a kind of exercise that comes from South African traditional dance.

#### How is it different from other kinds of dance-based exercise?

Instead of learning normal dance steps, you ‘draw’ letters and numbers with your feet.

#### Who can do it?

People of all ages and levels of fitness. The moves are easy if you know your alphabet and can count to ten.

#### Do people do it to music?

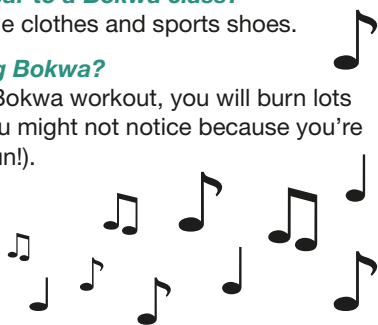
Yes. Bokwa participants exercise together to modern pop music.

#### What should I wear to a Bokwa class?

Loose, comfortable clothes and sports shoes.

#### Will I get fit doing Bokwa?

Definitely. In one Bokwa workout, you will burn lots of calories (but you might not notice because you’re having so much fun!).



**C**

## Street Workout

World Championship

3 DECEMBER, GORKY PARK,  
MOSCOW, RUSSIA

### Use the street as your gym!

#### RULES

- 1 The competition is open to girls and boys aged 15–25 years.
- 2 Competitors should wear ‘street’ style trainers, trousers or long shorts and a T-shirt.
- 3 Clothing should show the competitor’s full name and the flag of his/her country.
- 4 Each competitor should perform alone and each performance should last no longer than two minutes.
- 5 Moves can include sit-ups, push-ups, handstands, etc. The only equipment on stage will be horizontal bars.
- 6 Each competitor should bring their own music to accompany the performance.
- 7 Judges will mark each performance according to athletic ability, creativity and style.

**3** Read the texts again and then choose T (True) or F (False) for the statements below.

- |  |       |
|--|-------|
| 1 Sarah Jones has won first place in a competition in the UK.        | T / F |
| 2 Dancing has helped Mrs Jones to stay fit.                          | T / F |
| 3 In Bokwa you can use your arms to draw letters.                    | T / F |
| 4 In Bokwa you will have a lot of fun.                               | T / F |
| 5 The competition in Russia will be held in the street not in a gym. | T / F |
| 6 In the Street Workout competitors perform in groups.               | T / F |

**4** Read the texts again and answer the questions.

- Which text describes a group activity?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Which text describes an event that will attract people from different parts of the world?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What is unusual about the female dancer in Text A?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- How long has she had this particular hobby?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What can't you take part in if you're 14 years old or younger?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Apart from knowing the alphabet, what other ability is useful for Bokwa?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**OPTIMISE YOUR CULTURE**

**5** In pairs, discuss the questions.

- Think about what makes exercise fun for you (e.g. competing with other people, doing it to music, being part of a group). Which of the activities in the texts would you like to try and why?
- Are there any unusual forms of exercise where you live?

**PROJECT**

**6** You are going to do a project on an interesting form of exercise either from your own country or another country. Read the points and prepare your project research.

- Work in small groups. Choose an unusual form of exercise and do research on the internet. Find out how and when it started and what the benefits of this exercise are.
- In your groups, prepare either an article or poster using the information you have gathered. Illustrate it with drawings or photos.

**7** Present your information to the rest of the class. Explain the type of exercise and how it benefits people. Then display your poster/article in the classroom, and read the information from the other groups. Compare the forms of exercise of the different countries with those of your own country. Decide which one you would prefer to do.

**1** In pairs, discuss the statistics and answer the questions.

- 1 Why do you think people volunteer?
- 2 What kind of voluntary work do people do?
- 3 Is voluntary work popular in your country? Why / Why not?

**2** Read about three students who volunteer. Why did these teenagers choose the voluntary work that they do?

**62.8 million** Americans volunteered in 2015.

They volunteered **7.9 billion** hours of work.

They volunteered a value of **\$184 billion**.

In the USA, volunteers are **27% more likely to get a job than non-volunteers.**



## MAKING A DIFFERENCE

[Sign up](#) | [Sign in](#)

[How to volunteer](#)

[Volunteers](#)

[Organisations](#)

[What's new](#)

[Find a job](#)

Many students do voluntary work these days to help others, to improve their skills and gain a better understanding of the world, and to find out what kind of job they would like to do in the future. In the USA, for example, about 50% of teenage boys and 56% of teenage girls regularly volunteer. We interviewed three teens around the world to find out about their volunteering experiences.



Jiao

I'm from Changsha, which is a city of seven million people in central China. I want to be a teacher when I'm older, so last summer I volunteered to spend two weeks in a rural village in my province where I helped children at a primary school learn to read and write. In my country, there are still about 54 million illiterate people, especially in rural areas, so this was a wonderful opportunity to help make a difference. I stayed in the local schoolhouse and taught the children literacy skills four mornings a week. In my free time I enjoyed exploring the local markets and visiting the children's families. Life in the countryside is so different from the city and it was a challenge at times, but it was an amazing experience. Everyone was so friendly and I made some great friends.

Eduardo

Bahía Magdalena is a region in Mexico. It's on the Pacific coast and it's very beautiful. A lot of sea turtles live there but the number of turtles on this part of the coast is really low compared with 100 years ago. The turtles are legally protected but they need our help. I volunteered for a week with a local organisation that helps protect turtles. July and February are when turtles lay their eggs in their nesting sites. Humans and other animals can damage the eggs, so we collected the eggs and protected them until they were ready to hatch. Then we returned the eggs to their nests and helped the tiny baby turtles get into the sea. I loved working with these beautiful creatures. Now I definitely want to have a career in conservation in the future. I'll go anywhere and everywhere to help protect nature!



Taki



My mum told me about the Volunteer Project which helps disadvantaged children here in Cape Town, South Africa. So for the first month of my summer holidays I did some voluntary work for the charity and assisted in constructing and repairing school buildings and playgrounds for a local community. Our team helped create a more comfortable environment for these children, which was a very rewarding and enriching experience. Before this opportunity I didn't know what I wanted to do in the future, but now I'm certain I want to work outdoors and do something to help others.

**3** Read the web page again. Write *Jiao*, *Eduardo* or *Taki*.

- 1 Who found their voluntary experience difficult at times?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Who did physical work for their volunteering?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Who slept in local accommodation on their experience?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Who helped animals on their experience?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Who didn't know what to do for their career before?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Who spent the shortest amount of time doing voluntary work?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**4** Read the web page again and then choose **T (True)** or **F (False)** for the statements below.

- 1 More than half of American teenagers frequently do voluntary work. **T / F**
- 2 Everyone in Jiao's province of China is unable to read and write. **T / F**
- 3 Jiao volunteered to help out at a school in her city. **T / F**
- 4 Eduardo's voluntary experience confirms what he wants to do when he's older. **T / F**
- 5 The organisation that Eduardo worked for protects turtles' nesting sites everywhere. **T / F**
- 6 Taki's experience allows him to give something back to his local community. **T / F**

**OPTIMISE YOUR CULTURE**

**5** In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 Would you like to do voluntary work? What sort of experience would you like to have? Perhaps you already have voluntary experience. If so, what did you do?
- 2 What are the benefits of voluntary work? How important do you think it is to have this kind of experience as a teenager?

**PROJECT**

**6** Work in pairs. You are going to work on a presentation about a volunteer project for young people in your country. Read the points and prepare your project research.

- 1 Do some research on the internet and find a project that young people can volunteer for in your country. Find out:
  - where the project is
  - what the work involves
  - who it helps
  - what the benefits are for the person volunteering
  - any other information that you think is valuable.
- 2 Decide who will talk about each of the points above. Add in any additional information to make your presentation more interesting.

**7** With your partner, use your notes to give a presentation to the rest of the class on your volunteer project. Your presentation should be around two minutes long. Then pair up with others to discuss your projects and choose which experience is best suited to you.





# OPTIMISE A2

BOOST YOUR  
VOCABULARY

## Words connected with hobbies

### 1 Choose the correct words.

- Chloe often goes **cycling** / **horse-riding** on her bike.
- I like **painting** / **photograph** in my free time.
- Sam enjoys **skateboarding** / **reading** books about football.
- In summer, we go **rock climbing** / **swimming** in the sea.
- Sometimes we have a **magazine** / **barbecue** in the garden.
- The girls usually play volleyball on the **tent** / **beach**.

## Nouns/verbs

### 2 Choose the correct words.

- Jan \_\_\_ the guitar very well.  
a) makes      b) takes      c) plays
- People who write, sing and play songs are called \_\_\_\_ .  
a) musicians    b) music      c) guitarists
- 'Do you like my \_\_\_\_ ?' 'Yes, it's very good.'  
a) paint      b) painting    c) painter
- My favourite hobby is \_\_\_\_ .  
a) photograph   b) photographer   c) photography
- People who play a lot of computer games are called video \_\_\_\_ .  
a) gamers      b) players      c) makers

## Phrasal verbs

### 3 Complete the phrasal verbs with the words in the box.

after | back | in | off (× 2) | on | round

- come** \_\_\_\_\_ : enter
- come** \_\_\_\_\_ : visit
- get** \_\_\_\_\_ : return after going somewhere
- get** \_\_\_\_\_ : leave a bus or train
- look** \_\_\_\_\_ : take care of
- turn** \_\_\_\_\_ : stop a machine
- turn** \_\_\_\_\_ : start a machine

### 4 Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from Exercise 3.

- We usually go on our school trips on Monday and \_\_\_\_\_ on Thursday.
- Where do you \_\_\_\_\_ the bus in the morning?
- Please \_\_\_\_\_ the TV and go to bed!
- Oh, hello. \_\_\_\_\_ and sit down.

- My dad always \_\_\_\_\_ the radio when he gets in the car.
- Don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_ my dog until I come home, please.
- \_\_\_\_\_ to my house after school so we can play some computer games.

## Unit round-up

### 5 Choose the best answer (A, B or C) to fill each gap.

Q | Archive | ⌵ | ⌵

Posted 08/12/17 18.23

---

### Different hobbies

Not all of my friends have hobbies, but some of them have really good ones!

My friend Omar, for example, likes swimming at the (1) \_\_\_\_ . He likes to go rock climbing too, and sometimes when he goes away, I (2) \_\_\_\_ after his dog, Spike, until he gets back.

Lena collects songs on her phone. She has lots by Ed Sheeran because he's her favourite (3) \_\_\_\_ . When she's at home, she never (4) \_\_\_\_ off the radio!

Frederik likes watching films, and sometimes he comes (5) \_\_\_\_ to my house on Saturday and we watch a film on TV.

Jian loves (6) \_\_\_\_ and he's got a great new camera. He takes fantastic photographs.

And my hobby? Writing this blog!

- |             |                          |               |
|-------------|--------------------------|---------------|
| 1 A tent    | B paint                  | C beach       |
| 2 A take    | B look                   | C make        |
| 3 A painter | B photographer           | C musician    |
| 4 A turns   | B comes                  | C gets        |
| 5 A round   | B off                    | C after       |
| 6 A music   | B playing computer games | C photography |



## Words connected with *entertainment*

- 1** Answer the questions using the places in the box. You can use the places more than once.

art gallery		concert hall		gaming café
museum		opera house		theatre

Where do you go to ...

- see old things? \_\_\_\_\_
- play video games? \_\_\_\_\_
- look at paintings or photographs?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- watch people act? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- listen to music? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Words + prepositions

- 2** Choose the correct preposition to go with the underlined words.

- I usually go out / **to** / **in** with my friends on Saturdays.
- Aaron listens at / **to** / **with** a lot of music in his room.
- I never act to / **in** / **at** school plays.
- Do you always try clothes **on** / **with** / **in** before you buy them?
- Look at / **on** / **to** that hat. Isn't it amazing?
- I'm staying out / **on** / **in** tonight because I've got an exam in the morning.
- Look at my mum! She's dancing **to** / **with** / **on** my uncle.

- 3** Choose the best response.

- Do you like going to the theatre?
  - I like to look at it but I don't listen to it.
  - Yes, but I couldn't act in a play.
- How do you usually choose your clothes?
  - I always try them on before I buy them.
  - I usually go out on Saturdays.
- What do you do when you stay in?
  - I usually listen to music.
  - I usually look at TV.
- What's Marcia doing?
  - She's dancing with her sister.
  - She's acting in tonight.
- What do you want to do tonight?
  - I want to go out!
  - I want to go dancing with!
- Look at Susan!
  - Yes, she is.
  - Why? What's she doing?

## Collocations with nouns

- 4** Match to make sentences. Use the collocations in bold to help you.

- I always listen to my **MP3** \_\_\_\_
  - I think my favourite **TV** \_\_\_\_
  - We often play **board** \_\_\_\_
  - Let's sit at the front because this **cinema** \_\_\_\_
  - Look at this **newspaper** \_\_\_\_
- a) **screen** is quite small.  
 b) **article** about gaming cafés – it's really interesting.  
 c) **player** when I go running.  
 d) **games** like Monopoly in the winter.  
 e) **programmes** are the ones about animals and nature.

## Unit round-up

- 5** Choose the best answer (A, B or C) to fill each gap.

### Top hobbies

Where I live there are lots of things to do when you go (1) \_\_\_\_ . If you like paintings, there are two art (2) \_\_\_\_, and if you want to go to listen (3) \_\_\_\_ music, there's a big concert (4) \_\_\_\_ in the centre. We also have three theatres here, so there's always something to go and see. Near my house, there's a (5) \_\_\_\_ café too, and a cinema, so a lot of young people visit this area. However, sometimes, people prefer to (6) \_\_\_\_ in. Most people like to watch TV (7) \_\_\_\_ or go on the internet. When my friends come round, we sometimes play (8) \_\_\_\_ games. It's never boring where I live!

- |                |            |             |
|----------------|------------|-------------|
| 1 A at         | B with     | C out       |
| 2 A halls      | B theatres | C galleries |
| 3 A to         | B at       | C on        |
| 4 A gallery    | B hall     | C house     |
| 5 A boarding   | B playing  | C gaming    |
| 6 A be         | B stay     | C go        |
| 7 A programmes | B articles | C screens   |
| 8 A gaming     | B board    | C player    |

## Words connected with shopping

- 1 Label the pictures with the words in the box.

bill | change | cheque | credit card  
receipt | shop assistant



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 Choose the correct answer.

- What do you usually **buy** / **spend** your money on?
- That's £8, so here's £2 **change** / **cash** from £10. Thank you. Please come again.
- How much did your laptop **buy** / **cost**?
- There's a fruit and vegetable **department store** / **market** near my house.
- My mum goes shopping once a week at the **shopping centre** / **shopper**.

## Verbs + prepositions

- 3 Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.

- Do you have a credit card or are you paying  
a) for cash?      b) in cash?
- You should take your laptop  
a) back to the shop if it doesn't work.  
b) off if it has a problem.
- I always forget something so I write  
a) on a list the things I want to buy.  
b) down the things I want to buy.
- It's cold outside. Make sure you put  
a) a hat off.      b) a coat on.

- My parents always pay  
a) in the shopping.  
b) for my new clothes.
- We always take our shoes  
a) on the house.  
b) off before we go in the living room.

## Collocations with verbs

- 4 The words in bold are in the wrong sentences. Write the correct word in each gap.

- Who **catch** the shopping in your family? \_\_\_\_\_
- If you **go** some money every month, you can buy something nice. \_\_\_\_\_
- I told the waiter to **save** the change. \_\_\_\_\_
- I always **keep** the bus to school at 7:30. \_\_\_\_\_
- My favourite thing to do on Saturday is to **does** shopping. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit round-up

- 5 Choose the best answer (A, B or C) to fill each gap.

Hi Will!

How are you? You asked me to tell you about shops and shopping where I live, so here goes!

There are a few small shops near my house. I sometimes go there after school. Most of the shop (1) \_\_\_ know me and they're really friendly, but the food (2) \_\_\_ a little more there so I don't buy a lot. Also, there's a fruit and vegetable market in the street every Friday, so my dad (3) \_\_\_ shopping there to buy all the fresh food. You pay in (4) \_\_\_ for everything there and you can save money if you go late in the day because things are cheaper.

My mum (5) \_\_\_ the weekly shopping at the supermarket in town and pays for everything by (6) \_\_\_ card. Sometimes I go and help her.

There's a big shopping (7) \_\_\_\_\_, where we go for clothes and shoes. Sometimes I (8) \_\_\_ the bus into town and meet my friends there for an ice cream. Are things the same where you live?

Write soon,  
Charlie

- |             |              |             |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1 A helpers | B assistants | C customers |
| 2 A spends  | B costs      | C buys      |
| 3 A goes    | B makes      | C does      |
| 4 A cash    | B change     | C cheque    |
| 5 A makes   | B does       | C spends    |
| 6 A bill    | B receipt    | C credit    |
| 7 A store   | B market     | C centre    |
| 8 A change  | B keep       | C catch     |

## Words connected with school and studying

- 1** Read the clues and complete the crossword.  
What is the mystery subject?

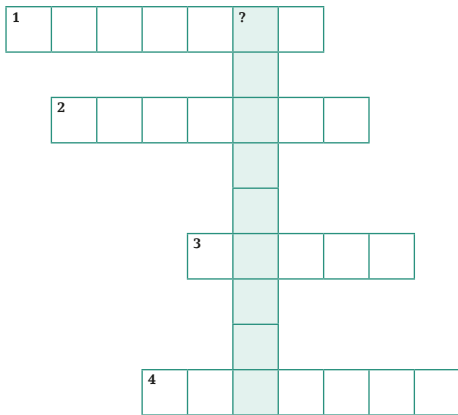
Across

In this school subject ...

- 1 you learn about plants and animals.
- 2 you learn about the past.
- 3 you use numbers a lot.
- 4 you learn how planes fly.

Down

Mystery subject: \_\_\_\_\_



- 2** Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I think it would be nice to **teach** / **learn** young children.
- 2 You can learn new words from a(n) **dictionary** / **eraser**.
- 3 We **study** / **practise** speaking in English in every lesson.
- 4 The teacher always writes our homework on the **desk** / **board**.

## Words + prepositions

- 3** Complete the sentences with *at*, *from*, *with* or *about*.

- 1 My mum always asks me what we learnt \_\_\_\_\_ in school.
- 2 I don't really know what my dad does \_\_\_\_\_ work.
- 3 Can I borrow some money \_\_\_\_\_ you until Friday?
- 4 What time did you arrive \_\_\_\_\_ school this morning?
- 5 Do you need any help \_\_\_\_\_ your homework?
- 6 I learnt a lot \_\_\_\_\_ our new teacher today.

## Collocations with verbs

- 4** Replace the words in bold with the correct words.

- 1 My brother's **making** an online photography course. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Is it easy for a beginner to **have** a language like Arabic or Japanese? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 In my free time, I like **making** pictures with these pencils. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 On Tuesdays, classes finish early so we **go** school at 2:30 pm. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 My sister wants to **be** to university and study biology. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 After dinner, my brother and I usually **make** homework in our room. \_\_\_\_\_

## Unit round-up

- 5** Read the text and choose the correct words.

Posted 10/10/17 12:57

**Dear Sonja,**  
What can I do to be a better student at school?  
Jim

**Dear Jim,**  
There are probably lots of things you can do. First of all, you should make sure you always arrive (1) **to** / **at** school on time. (So don't go to bed late!)

Maybe it will help if you sit at the front of the class – you'll be able to see the (2) **board** / **bookshelf** better. (3) **Remember** / **Practise** to do your homework every night – do it soon after you (4) **take** / **leave** school if you can.

If you miss a lesson, you can (5) **borrow** / **help** some notes from a friend, and ask your teacher for help (6) **from** / **with** anything you don't understand.

Learning (7) **at** / **about** new things can be fun – you just have to listen to your teachers and (8) **learn** / **study** hard.

Good luck!  
Sonja

Type a message ...

## Words connected with sport

- 1 Label the pictures with the words in the box.

badminton | cricket | pool | skiing  
stadium | table tennis



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 Choose the correct word.

- Do you know how to **ride** / **race** a horse?
- The **tickets** / **winners** to get in the stadium cost a lot.
- The **match** / **coach** told us we were playing very well.
- The football club buys our **swimsuits** / **kit** for us.

## Verbs/nouns

- 3 Complete the sentences with the noun form of the verb in brackets.

- Who was the \_\_\_\_\_ of the race? (**win**)
- There were a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in the sea. (**surf**)
- One of the \_\_\_\_\_ fell and had to leave the race. (**run**)
- Dino is a great football \_\_\_\_\_. (**play**)
- \_\_\_\_\_ is my favourite summer activity. (**swim**)

## Collocations with verbs

- 4 Write one word in each gap to complete the collocations in bold. The first letter has been given.

- Look! Fiona is going to **w**\_\_\_\_\_ the **race**!
- Do you know how to **p**\_\_\_\_\_ **cricket**?
- I'm going to **e**\_\_\_\_\_ the tennis **competition** this year.
- T**\_\_\_\_\_ the **ball** to me!
- I don't think I can **c**\_\_\_\_\_ that **mountain**!
- We might **g**\_\_\_\_\_ **swimming** on Saturday. Do you want to come?

## Unit round-up

- 5 Choose the best answer (A, B or C) to fill each gap.

⏪ ⏩

[f](#)
[t](#)
[in](#)
[←](#)
[✉](#)

### Summer sports fun!

Join us on 5th July at Newtown Stadium, where there will be fun for everyone!

- Why not get your team together and **(1)** \_\_\_\_\_ our football competition? There will be matches for all ages.
- For runners, there will be **(2)** \_\_\_\_\_ over 100, 200, 400 and 800 metres.
- Indoors at the stadium, you can play **(3)** \_\_\_\_\_ with your friends or try badminton.
- Have a go at **(4)** \_\_\_\_\_ cricket – we think you'll love it!
- You don't need any special **(5)** \_\_\_\_\_ – just a T-shirt and shorts.
- Great prizes for the **(6)** \_\_\_\_\_ of all the competitions!
- (7)** \_\_\_\_\_ cost £3 per person or £10 for a family of four. Players in the teams and **(8)** \_\_\_\_\_ in the races don't have to pay.

- |              |                |           |
|--------------|----------------|-----------|
| 1 A enter    | B play         | C surf    |
| 2 A matches  | B races        | C coaches |
| 3 A skiing   | B table tennis | C surfing |
| 4 A climbing | B going        | C playing |
| 5 A kit      | B swimsuits    | C winners |
| 6 A swimmers | B surfers      | C winners |
| 7 A Balls    | B Stadiums     | C Tickets |
| 8 A run      | B running      | C runners |

## Words connected with *weather and nature*

- 1 Label the pictures with the words in the box.

beach | forest | hill | mountain | river | sky



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 Choose the correct word.

- It was a **fog** / **foggy** day and we couldn't see very much.
- There isn't enough **ice** / **snow** for us to go skiing.
- When it's **windy** / **cloudy**, we can't see the sun.
- Don't go out in that **rain** / **rainy**. Wait until it stops.
- Yesterday was a **sun** / **sunny** day so we went to the beach.
- Be careful because they said there might be **cloudy** / **thunderstorms** later!

## Words + prepositions

- 3 Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

at | by | for | to (× 2)

- I want \_\_\_\_\_ go for a walk but it's raining.
- We learn about the weather \_\_\_\_\_ studying it.
- September is the best month \_\_\_\_\_ swimming here.
- It's important \_\_\_\_\_ drive carefully in bad weather.
- I'm not very good \_\_\_\_\_ cooking, so I won't offer to cook for you!

## Nouns/adjectives

- 4 Complete the table with the adjectives.

nouns	adjectives
1 cloud	_____
2 fog	_____
3 ice	_____
4 rain	_____
5 snow	_____
6 sun	_____

## Unit round-up

- 5 Choose the correct words.



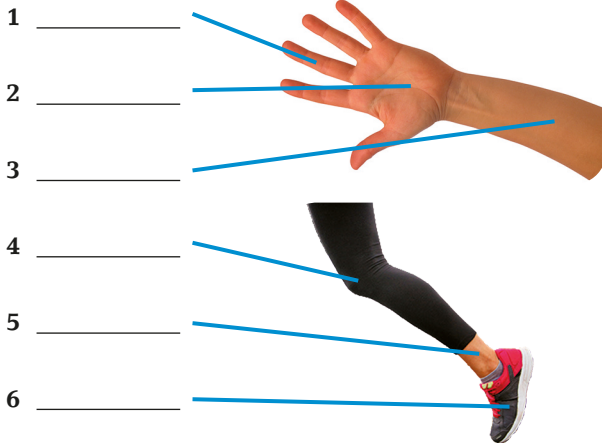
### Where I live

My house is near a small village in the (1) **mountains** / **river**. One of the best things about it is the amazing views we have. We can see a lot of (2) **hill** / **sky**, so that means it's a great place to look at the stars at night. We also know what the weather is going to be like. If we see dark (3) **clouds** / **ice** in the distance and the wind is coming from that direction, we know it's going to be (4) **rainy** / **rain** soon so we have time to get ready! Living so high up means we get a lot of bad weather. ☹️ It's important (5) **to** / **that** make sure we don't leave the windows open because if it's (6) **foggy** / **windy**, they can get broken. In the winter, we get (7) **thunderstorms** / **snow** before most people too – it's beautiful to wake up and see all the trees in the (8) **forest** / **beach** covered in white, but sometimes we can't get to school!

## Words connected with health

- 1 Label the pictures with the words in the box.

ankle | arm | finger | foot | hand | knee



- 2 The words in bold are jumbled. Write the correct word.

- If your **rottha** hurts, you shouldn't talk too much.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- You smell things with your **sone**. \_\_\_\_\_
- Your feet are at the end of your **gles**. \_\_\_\_\_
- My **cafe** looks red in this picture! \_\_\_\_\_
- Most people have blue or brown **esye**.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- You listen with your **resa**. \_\_\_\_\_
- Your **eken** is in the middle of your leg.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The food you eat goes to your **chamots**.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Words + prepositions

- 3 Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.

- I'm seeing the doctor because I've got a problem  
a) to my arm.                      b) with my leg.
- Doctor, I've got a pain  
a) in my stomach.                b) with my back.
- Did the doctor give you medicine  
a) for your throat?                b) to your eyes?
- 'John's ill.' 'Really? What's the matter  
a) with him?'                        b) on him?'
- I was in the adult hospital because there isn't a special hospital  
a) for children here.                b) with children here.
- Hello, I'd like an appointment  
a) to the doctor, please.  
b) with the doctor, please.

## Collocations with verbs

- 4 Match to make sentences. Use the words in bold to help you.

- If you exercise regularly, you won't **catch** \_\_\_\_
- You should **brush** \_\_\_\_
- It really hurts when you **break** \_\_\_\_
- I'm not going to school today because I **feel** \_\_\_\_
- The first thing the nurse did was to **take** \_\_\_\_
- You should phone to **make** \_\_\_\_

- ill.
- your **teeth** at least twice a day.
- an **appointment** with the doctor.
- your **leg**!
- a **cold** very often.
- my **temperature**.

## Unit round-up

- 5 Choose the best answer (A, B or C) to fill each gap.

Posted 05/12/17 15.23

---

**Do you need a doctor?**

We are all ill sometimes, and most of us (1) \_\_\_ a cold in the winter. You know it will last for two or three days, but when should you (2) \_\_\_ an appointment with your doctor?

Firstly, you don't need a doctor if your (3) \_\_\_ hurts a little – that's normal. It's a good idea to take your (4) \_\_\_, but don't worry if it's a little high – this is your body fighting the illness. However, if it's very high or it doesn't go down, it could be a danger (5) \_\_\_ your health. Call the doctor immediately if this happens or if you have a very bad (6) \_\_\_ somewhere. It might be nothing, but it's much better to be safe.

**Do you know how to act in an accident?**

If someone (7) \_\_\_ their arm or leg, do you know what to do? It is important to know the right and wrong things to do in an emergency. Perhaps you could (8) \_\_\_ a course in first aid. One day you might be very happy that you did.

- |            |            |               |
|------------|------------|---------------|
| 1 A brush  | B catch    | C feel        |
| 2 A make   | B take     | C do          |
| 3 A throat | B face     | C knee        |
| 4 A finger | B medicine | C temperature |
| 5 A in     | B to       | C by          |
| 6 A matter | B pain     | C danger      |
| 7 A breaks | B brushes  | C catches     |
| 8 A take   | B make     | C tell        |



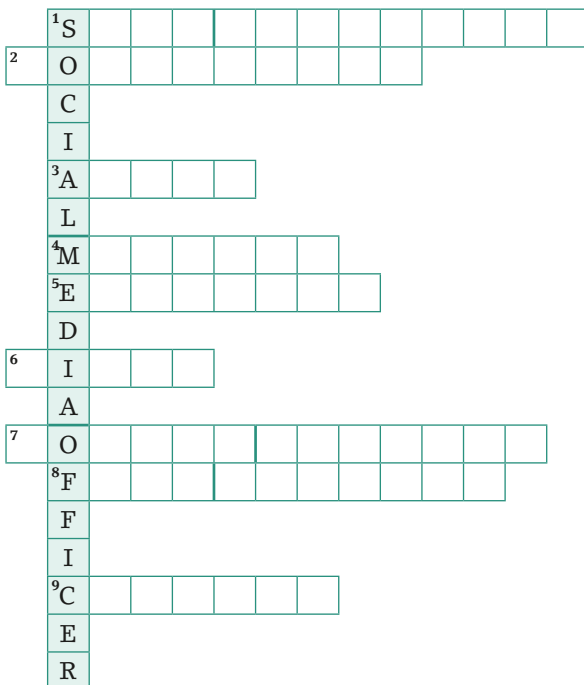
## Words connected with work and jobs

### 1 Read the clues and complete the crossword.

#### Across

#### Someone who ...

- works in a shop (two words).
- works for a newspaper.
- works in the theatre or in films.
- organises and controls other people.
- works with machines.
- works in the air.
- keeps people safe (two words).
- puts out fires.
- makes places clean.



### 2 Match the words to their meanings.

- career \_\_\_\_
  - company \_\_\_\_
  - customer \_\_\_\_
  - earn \_\_\_\_
  - meeting \_\_\_\_
  - staff \_\_\_\_
  - worker \_\_\_\_
- a) make money by doing work  
 b) someone who works in a job  
 c) an occasion when you discuss things and make decisions  
 d) someone who buys things  
 e) an organisation where you work  
 f) all the people who work in a place  
 g) the job you do for life

## Words with -ian / -ress / -ist / -er / -r

### 3 Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

artist | chemist's | dentist | engineer  
 explorer | musician | receptionist | waitress

- When I arrived at the hotel, the \_\_\_\_\_ gave me my key.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ was the first person to visit some of these places.
- That bridge was built by a famous \_\_\_\_\_.
- That painting is the work of a famous Spanish \_\_\_\_\_.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ in the café brought me a glass of juice.
- Joel played the piano well and had a long career as a \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you have a toothache, you need to make an appointment with your \_\_\_\_\_.
- Shirin went to the \_\_\_\_\_ to buy some medicine because she was feeling ill.

## Words + prepositions

### 4 Choose the correct word.

- Angela became famous as a writer **for** / **of** children's stories.
- Alex is a singer **to** / **in** a band.
- Who is the manager **of** / **from** your football team?
- Can you study for a diploma **at** / **in** music?
- Which company does your dad work **to** / **for**?
- My mum is having a meeting **to** / **with** her boss.

## Unit round-up

### 5 Read the essay and choose the correct words.

#### What would you like to learn at school?

I like a lot of the subjects we study at school but I think we should learn more about the jobs that we can do in the future. That way, it would be easier for us to choose a

(1) **customer** / **career**.

The school should arrange for people with different jobs to come and talk to us about what they do. For example, they could ask a police (2) **officer** / **manager** to come and tell us about what they do in a normal day. Or they could send a(n) (3) **engineer** / **footballer** to tell us what he or she has built. Students could then ask questions. I'd like to ask them how much money they (4) **explore** / **earn** or what it's like working (5) **for** / **of** a big company. I'd be interested in listening to a (6) **writer** / **manager** of stories like the *Harry Potter* books. I'd also like to ask a (7) **farmer** / **musician** or actor about a career in music or films.

If we did this, it would be very useful for us. A lot of people want to go to university or get a (8) **meeting** / **diploma** in something, and it would be great for us to have information to help us decide.

## Words connected with *houses and homes*

### 1 Match the words to their descriptions.

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1 fridge ____ | 5 bed ____      |
| 2 cooker ____ | 6 lamp ____     |
| 3 table ____  | 7 bath ____     |
| 4 sofa ____   | 8 armchair ____ |

- something to boil or fry food on
- the place where we sleep
- a place to wash
- a place where you usually eat
- a comfortable place for one person to sit
- a light
- a place to keep food cold
- a comfortable place for two or more people to sit

### 2 Choose the correct word.

- I'm a little cold. Can I have a **bookcase** / **blanket** please?
- How long does it take you to have a **sink** / **shower**?
- I have two **pillows** / **chairs** on my bed and I sleep really well.
- Take a **towel** / **toilet** with you if you're having a shower.

## Phrasal verbs

### 3 Complete the phrasal verbs in bold with *down, out or up*.

- What time do you **get** \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning?
- Who **washes** \_\_\_\_\_ in your house?
- Did you **grow** \_\_\_\_\_ in this house?
- Did you **find** \_\_\_\_\_ what you have to do for homework?
- If you're tired, you should **lie** \_\_\_\_\_ for a few minutes.
- I can't see you tomorrow because I'm **going** \_\_\_\_\_ with my dad.



## Collocations with verbs

### 4 Choose the correct word.

- We have to **move** / **wash** the kitchen floor every day.
- How many times have you **moved** / **tidied** house in your life?
- I'll be ready in a minute – I just need to **make** / **have** a shower.
- Do your parents tell you to **tidy** / **make** your room every day?
- It's a good idea to **make** / **move** your bed when you get up in the morning.
- It's your turn to **do** / **make** the washing-up.

## Unit round-up

### 5 Choose the best answer (A, B or C) to fill each gap.



### A new home!

A new home is very exciting, but moving (1) \_\_\_\_\_ is also tiring for the whole family, so here are some tips on how you can help.

When you are packing your things, make sure you write on the box what is inside. That way, all your (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and pillows will end up near your bed and your books near the bookcase (not the other way round!).

You can help to clean the new house by (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the floors. Do this before you move if you can, because it will be much more difficult with boxes everywhere. Then, you can (4) \_\_\_\_\_ your room, putting things in their new places. Don't forget to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ your bed (after all this work you will certainly want to lie (6) \_\_\_\_\_)!

Finally, it's really useful to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ out where the best places are to buy food in your area because nobody will want to cook or (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the washing-up for the first few days!

- |            |           |            |
|------------|-----------|------------|
| 1 A house  | B home    | C address  |
| 2 A baths  | B sinks   | C blankets |
| 3 A making | B washing | C having   |
| 4 A do     | B move    | C tidy     |
| 5 A take   | B get     | C make     |
| 6 A down   | B up      | C out      |
| 7 A learn  | B find    | C look     |
| 8 A do     | B make    | C have     |



**OPTIMISE  
A2**

**CLIL**

**1** Work in pairs and discuss the statistics. Is there anything you find surprising?



**In the UK, each year ...**

**99.8%** of 11–15-year-olds attend an art event (e.g. music, dance, theatre)

**72.8%** visit a heritage site, art gallery or museum

**72.7%** regularly visit a library

**96.1%** do sport in their free time



**2** Read the text. What free-time activities does it mention?

**W**hat do you do with your free time? Experts agree that teenagers need free time to explore their own interests and to relax. A recent survey shows that many teenagers spend free time doing ‘passive’ activities such as watching TV, listening to music, or playing computer games. But others spend this on more active interests and hobbies. Some of the most popular activities are doing sports such as football or swimming, going to the gym, dancing or playing music. Many teenagers also use this time to do jobs such as babysitting. Other teens have more unusual hobbies. Let’s meet two of them.

My hobby is ‘parkour’, also known as free-running. It’s a way of getting from one place to another as fast as possible. Some people say it’s just running, but it isn’t. Yes, you do run in parkour, but it combines running with jumping and gymnastics. It’s a way of using your body to travel, but also using the world around you – things like walls and buildings. I do parkour once a week at my school and every weekend I practise outside with my friends. Parkour is popular in Denmark, and we’re lucky that the first public parkour park, the JiYo Park, is in my city, Copenhagen. Some people say it’s dangerous, but we’re always very careful. Parkour is not all about jumping off buildings!

– Andreas, Denmark



My favourite free-time activity is origami. It’s when you fold paper into shapes to make small models. I can make birds, flowers and animals. They’re really beautiful. I like choosing the colour of the paper and learning how to make new designs. Origami is a great hobby and I always find it very relaxing. Origami is very popular here in Japan, and in many other countries too. It’s a hobby that people of any age can do and it isn’t expensive. Some of the models are very difficult. You have to fold the paper over 100 times! I can’t make things like that – yet! I usually do origami on Saturdays but this week I’m going to an origami club every day. It’s never boring!

– Hiriko, Japan

**3** Read the texts. What do these sentences refer to? Write *Parkour* or *Origami*.

- 1 It's a way of moving fast. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 It isn't expensive to do this. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 It combines several sports. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 People are careful when they practise it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 People of any age can do it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 You sometimes learn to make very difficult things. \_\_\_\_\_

**4** Read the texts again and choose the correct word or phrase.

- 1 Teenagers need free time to help them **do sport** / **explore their interests**.
- 2 Playing computer games is a **passive** / **an active** free-time activity.
- 3 Parkour is mainly **running** / **jumping**.
- 4 Andreas does parkour **alone** / **with friends**.
- 5 In origami, you fold **flowers** / **paper** to make models.
- 6 Hiriko likes origami because **it's relaxing** / **it's a hobby** for everyone.

**5** Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- 1 How much free time do you have? How do you spend your free time?
- 2 What do you think are the most popular hobbies for teenagers in your country?
- 3 Do you have an unusual hobby or do you know someone who does? Describe it.

**DID YOU KNOW?**

- Rock climbing on indoor climbing walls is growing in popularity among teens. The first artificial climbing wall is believed to be Schurman Rock in Seattle, which was built in 1939. Climbing has been recommended for inclusion at the 2020 Tokyo Olympics. Last year 'sport climbing' was chosen by the IOC as a demonstration sport at the Youth Olympic Games in Nanjing, China. Climbing walls are now present in more than 140 countries around the world with more than 35 million climbers practising the sport! 40% of all climbers are under 20 years old!

**PROJECT**

**6** Work in groups to make a poster about free-time activities and hobbies for teenagers in your country. Do some research on the internet to find information about the following:

- how much free time teenagers have each day
- what the most popular free-time activities are
- some more unusual free-time activities that are popular
- other interesting or surprising information about free-time activities.

Work together and discuss what you found out. Decide which information to include and design a poster to present your information. Find pictures to illustrate your poster.

**7** Present your information to the class. Display your posters in the classroom. Move around and look at the posters from the other groups.

**VOCABULARY FOCUS**

**active [adj]:** full of activity

**attend [v]:** to be present at an event or activity

**babysitting [n]:** caring for other people's children

**building [n]:** a structure made of material such as stone or wood that has a roof and walls

**careful [adj]:** thinking about what you are doing so that you don't do anything wrong

**dangerous [adj]:** something that might cause harm or hurt you

**explore [v]:** to go to a place in order to learn about it

**fold [v]:** to bend a piece of paper and press one part of it over another part

**gymnastics [n]:** a sport involving difficult physical exercises

**heritage site [n]:** a special building or place that is important to history and culture

**model [n]:** small copy of something

**passive [adj]:** without controlling events

1 Look at the photos. What type of holiday do you think each photo represents?

2 Read the text. Why is tourism growing in Japan and Cape Verde?

# WHY WE TRAVEL

Where did you last go on holiday? Why did you choose to go there? There are many reasons why we travel: for pleasure, to visit family and friends or to discover new places. There are plenty of choices in the world, but what factors help us decide where to go?

**The Cape Verde islands** off the west coast of Africa are becoming a popular package holiday destination for tourists, thanks to their warm climate and a recent growth in development, with many new hotels and airports.

## So why do tourists choose certain destinations and not others?

We can study the flow of tourism by looking at push and pull factors. Push factors are things that make people want a holiday in general. Pull factors are things that attract people to a particular destination.

### Push factors

- rest and relaxation
- escape and adventure
- health and fitness

### Pull factors

- reputation
- climate (temperature / hours of sunshine for beach destinations; snowfall for ski destinations)
- attractions (natural, e.g. beaches, mountains, forests; artificial, e.g. amusement parks, historic buildings, shopping)
- cultural experiences (sights and events; local customs; food and drink)
- economic reasons (low-cost travel; value for money; exchange rate)
- accessibility (transport, e.g. plane, boat, coach, train; journey time)

For example, a destination like London has a good reputation, and it offers plenty of attractions and cultural experiences, too. Of course, not every pull factor is relevant to a destination. In London, the climate isn't a big pull and neither is value for money: it can be an expensive city with traffic problems and a lot of rain!

**London** is a city destination where you can do lots of sightseeing, go shopping and try amazing food. The capital of the UK is one of the most popular cities for tourists in the world. In 2015, there were 31.5 million visitors to the city despite the fact that tourist numbers were increasing in other cities such as Copenhagen.

**Japan** is exotic and culturally fascinating for many visitors. Last year, it was the fastest-growing travel destination in the world, with a 24% increase in tourism. At the beginning of the decade, the number of visitors fell a little because of an earthquake and a tsunami. However, a new focus on tourism promotion is helping to increase the number of international visitors.

**3 Read the text again and choose the correct word or phrase.**

- 1 International tourism is **growing** / **falling** in Japan.
- 2 The Cape Verde islands are a popular **cultural** / **beach** destination for tourists.
- 3 Visitors are mainly choosing **Copenhagen** / **London** as a European city destination.
- 4 **Push** / **Pull** factors encourage people to take a break from the routine of daily life.
- 5 Financial reasons such as **tourism promotions** / **low travel costs** can help people decide where to go on holiday.
- 6 People usually consider **some of the** / **all the** push and pull factors when choosing a destination.

**4 Read the sentences and write words or phrases for your answers.**

- 1 Two reasons why people travel.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 One reason why tourism in Japan was falling.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Three factors that can help us choose a destination.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**5 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.**

- 1 The text gives us several reasons why people travel. Can you think of any other reasons for travelling?
- 2 What do you think are the pull factors for a country like Japan? Is this a country you might like to visit in the future?

**DID YOU KNOW?**

- France is the most visited country in the world, with approximately 83 million tourists a year.
- Las Vegas in the USA is the city with the most hotel rooms in the world – there are over 62,000!
- One in twelve people in the world works in tourism.
- By 2020, the number of people travelling globally will be 1.6 billion a year.

**PROJECT**

**6 Look at the recent top-ten tourist destinations for British people:**

**TOP 10  
TOURIST DESTINATIONS  
FOR BRITS** 

- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 Mallorca, Spain       | 6 Orlando, USA              |
| 2 Tenerife, Spain       | 7 Gran Canaria, Spain       |
| 3 The Algarve, Portugal | 8 Benidorm, Spain           |
| 4 Ibiza, Spain          | 9 Crete, Greece             |
| 5 Lanzarote, Spain      | 10 Disneyland Paris, France |

What are the current trends of British tourism? What do you think are the push and pull factors that encourage British people to choose these destinations?

**7 In groups, find out about the current tourism trends for your country. Research the most popular holiday destinations for people in your country and the push and pull factors that encourage people to choose these destinations. Then research which countries the tourists who most commonly visit your country come from, and consider the push and pull factors that attract people to your country.**

**8 Present your findings about your country and compare the information with your classmates.**

**VOCABULARY FOCUS**

**decade [n]:** a period of ten years

**earthquake [n]:** a sudden shaking movement of the ground

**exchange rate [n]:** the value of money of one country changed into the money of another country

**exotic [adj]:** interesting or exciting because it's unusual or different

**factor [n]:** something that influences how things happen

**increase [n]:** a rise in something

**low-cost [adj]:** cheap

**promotion [n]:** advertising to attract people's attention

**reputation [n]:** an opinion that people have about how good or bad something or somewhere is

**trend [n]:** a gradual change or development that produces a particular result

**tsunami [n]:** a very large wave caused by an earthquake in the sea

**(Japanese) Yen [n]:** the currency of Japan

**1** Work in pairs. Look at the photos and discuss the questions.

- 1 What can you see in the photos?
- 2 Why do you think athletes wear the two items?
- 3 How do you think the two photos are connected?

**2** Quickly read the text. Which statement best describes what it is about?

- a) We can now wear clothes that help the environment.
- b) New technology in clothes is useful and fun.
- c) Scientists are helping athletes.

## Smartclothes

Technology in our clothes is already helping us a lot today. Athletes wear devices on their wrists that track sleep, heart rate and blood pressure. You can even buy a GPS-based cat collar that tells you the location, health and other activities of your pet.

There are many newer technology items available, such as clothes and bags with flexible solar panels that charge devices while you are wearing them. You need to be in the sun for one hour to charge a smartphone to 50% power.

A few scientists are taking clothing technology further into the future, with some incredible new ideas that are even more unusual.



## Anti-pollution bracelet

The Hand Tree is a new kind of bracelet, inspired by trees. Trees use photosynthesis to produce clean air, and the Hand Tree takes polluted air from around you and cleans it. It contains a carbon filter that processes smoke, bad smells and chemicals in the air and recycles the air back into the atmosphere. The bracelet is the first design to use this technology, but the developer wants to make other accessories to do the same thing.

## Dresses that move when someone looks at them

Designer Ying Gao uses technology in her dresses so that they respond when someone is looking at them. Eye-tracking technology activates tiny motors inside the fabric. These motors move to make the dress move and change shape. The clothes also light up and glow in the dark because the fabric is made up of photoluminescent fibres.

## Human-powered batteries

Most wearable technology items like watches and wristbands use lithium-ion batteries. But because the batteries are smaller than usual, you need to charge the devices a lot. Some devices use thinner zinc batteries that are very flexible. They can store more energy, but they are more expensive.

Scientists at Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) are now developing devices that use human energy to generate electricity. The device is the size of a stamp and has a similar structure to a battery with two conducting electrodes separated by a liquid electrolyte. When the device bends, the electrons move from one electrode to the other, and this movement creates energy.



**3 Read the text again. Then read the sentences and write D (dress), B (bracelet) or H (human-powered battery).**

- 1 It contains electrons. \_\_\_\_
- 2 You wear it on your wrist. \_\_\_\_
- 3 It generates electricity. \_\_\_\_
- 4 You can see it in the dark. \_\_\_\_
- 5 It contains technology that responds to eyes. \_\_\_\_
- 6 It contains a carbon filter. \_\_\_\_

**4 Match the sentence halves.**

- 1 You can buy a bag that \_\_\_\_
  - 2 A device for athletes \_\_\_\_
  - 3 The Hand Tree \_\_\_\_
  - 4 Ying Gao's dress \_\_\_\_
  - 5 A lithium-ion battery \_\_\_\_
  - 6 The MIT battery \_\_\_\_
- a) moves and lights up.
  - b) uses human energy to generate power.
  - c) tracks your heart rate.
  - d) doesn't have a lot of energy.
  - e) charges your phone.
  - f) cleans the air like a tree.

**5 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.**

- 1 Which of the inventions in the text do you think is the most useful?
- 2 Do you or does a person you know have any clothes or accessories that use technology? What do the devices do?

#### DID YOU KNOW?

- Astronauts in space wear clothes that use 'phase change material' (PCM). This material responds to a person's body temperature and can store and release large amounts of energy. When a person is hot, the PCM absorbs the heat and melts. When a person is cold, the PCM releases the heat energy. The PCM consists of tiny particles inside the fabric. The person who is wearing the clothes can't see or feel the particles.

#### PROJECT

**6 Either in pairs, or small groups, do one of these projects:**

- Find out about another item of clothing or accessory that uses technology, or about a new invention that you can wear or carry. Describe the key features of the item, and explain how the technology works.

- Design an invention of your own that you can wear or carry, and that uses technology. Explain what the item does and how the technology works.

**7 Present the information to the class.**

#### VOCABULARY FOCUS

- accessory [n]:** a small thing such as jewellery or a bag that you wear
- already [adv]:** describing a situation that started in the past before a specified time
- athlete [n]:** someone who is good at sport and takes part in sports competitions
- battery [n]:** an object that fits into something and gives it electricity
- blood pressure [n]:** the pressure at which blood flows around your body
- bracelet [n]:** a piece of jewellery that you wear around your wrist
- charge [v]:** to put electricity into a piece of equipment
- collar [n]:** a thin piece of leather or plastic that a dog or cat wears around its neck
- device [n]:** a machine or piece of equipment
- electrode [n]:** a small metal or carbon object inside a battery that electricity flows through
- electrolyte [n]:** a liquid containing atoms that electricity can pass through
- fibre [n]:** a piece of thread
- filter [n]:** a piece of equipment that removes parts that aren't wanted from a liquid or gas
- flexible [adj]:** able to bend or move easily
- generate [v]:** to produce power
- glow [v]:** to shine with a soft light
- GPS [n]:** global positioning system: a system for finding exactly where someone or something is anywhere in the world using satellites
- heart rate [n]:** the speed at which your heart beats
- motor [n]:** the part of a machine that makes it work or move
- photosynthesis [n]:** the process by which green plants use carbon dioxide and energy from light to produce food
- recycle [v]:** to use something again
- solar panel [n]:** a piece of equipment that uses energy from the Sun to create power
- store [v]:** to keep something in a particular place
- track [v]:** to follow or measure something
- wrist [n]:** the part of your body between your hand and your arm
- wristband [n]:** something that you wear around your wrist

**1** In pairs, look at the graph and discuss the questions.

- 1 What information does the graph give us?
- 2 Which sport is each event for?
- 3 Which sports event is the most popular?

**2** Read the text. Which countries are mentioned?

### Popular sports events: global TV audiences



## The Origins of Sport

Big sports events can bring people together, crossing barriers of language and culture. Here are some of the biggest global sports events that people enjoy watching on TV.

### The Olympic Games™

The Olympic rings represent the five continents where competitors come from and they also symbolise the unity of athletes all over the world. The first Olympic Games were in Greece in 776 BC. One extraordinary thing about these original games is that, even though there was a war, all fighting stopped. Today, the idea of peace and international cooperation is still an important principle of the Games. At the 2012 London Olympics, athletes from 204 countries took part in events such as athletics, badminton and swimming. An incredible 600 million people in different countries watched the opening ceremony of the 2008 Beijing Games.



### FIFA World Cup

This football championship is every four years. The first was in Uruguay in 1930 with 13 teams from South America, Europe and North America. Many European teams weren't in the competition because they couldn't travel to South America. Today, FIFA has associations in 209 countries and is sometimes called the 'United Nations of Football'. In 2010, 700 million people all over the world watched the final between the Netherlands and Spain at the 'Soccer City' stadium in Johannesburg, South Africa. The winners were Spain.

### NFL Super Bowl

American football evolved from a combination of rugby and association football. The NFL (National Football League) Super Bowl is the final of the annual championship. Many people from the US take the day off work to watch the game on TV, and it's the most popular US TV broadcast of the year. But American football is not only popular in the US. It is popular in Canada and Mexico, and there are more than 400 high school football teams in Japan. Over 100 million viewers all over the world watch the final every year on TV. However, you don't have to have a TV, as lots of people also watch it online.



**3** Read the text again and then choose T (True) or F (False) for the statements below. Correct the false statements.

- 1 The Olympic rings represent peace. **T / F**  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The original Olympic Games in Greece happened when there was a war. **T / F**  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Athletes from 104 countries took part in the 2012 London Olympic Games. **T / F**  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The first FIFA World Cup had teams from three continents. **T / F**  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 FIFA is a part of the United Nations. **T / F**  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The Super Bowl Final must be a national holiday in the US. **T / F**  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 American football is popular in several countries. **T / F**  
\_\_\_\_\_

**4** Complete the table with the correct information. If there is no information in the text write NI.

	The Olympic Games	FIFA World Cup	NFL Super Bowl
How many countries take part?			
When was the first event?			
Where was the first event?			
How many people watch it on TV?			

**5** Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- 1 Which are the most popular/oldest sports in your country?
- 2 Are there any big sports events in your country?
- 3 What big sports events do you like to watch on TV?

#### DID YOU KNOW?

- Wimbledon is the oldest tennis tournament in the world and the only major one played on grass. It started in 1877 in the Wimbledon area of London. They need 54,000 yellow tennis balls for each tournament and 250 ball girls and boys. Spectators eat 27,000 kilos of strawberries along with 7,000 litres of cream.

#### PROJECT

**6** In a group, work on a project about a popular sports event in your own country or another country. Choose a sport and do some research on the internet to find information about the following:

- a popular national or international sports event: What is it? Where is it?
- the history of the sports event: When did it start? Why did it start?
- How many people watch it on TV? Which countries do competitors come from? What is the spirit of the event?
- any interesting or surprising facts about the sports event.

Work together and discuss what you found out. Decide how to present your information to the class. This can be a slideshow, a presentation or a poster.

**7** Present your information to the class.

#### VOCABULARY FOCUS

**association football [n]:** *football played according to FIFA's official rules*

**barrier [n]:** *something that separates one thing from another*

**championship [n]:** *a competition to find the best team*

**combination [n]:** *something that combines several things*

**competitor [n]:** *someone who takes part in a sports competition*

**continent [n]:** *one of the very large areas of land on Earth that are divided into countries*

**cooperation [n]:** *a situation in which people work together to achieve a result*

**event [n]:** *an organised occasion*

**extraordinary [adj]:** *very unusual or surprising*

**opening ceremony [n]:** *a formal public event that starts a competition*

**principle [n]:** *a belief or theory*

**represent [v]:** *to be a symbol of something*

**symbolise [v]:** *to be a symbol of something*

**take part [v]:** *to be involved in an activity*

**take the day off [v]:** *to not go to work or school*

**TV broadcast [n]:** *a programme on TV*

**unity [n]:** *a situation in which people or countries join together*

**1 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.**

- 1 Look at the photos. What type of weather can you see in each?
- 2 Which one is closest to the weather in your country?

**2 Read the text. Which climate is the coldest and snowiest?**



# Climate zones

There are different climatic zones around the world which are controlled by many geographical factors. If you live near an ocean or a large lake, the weather will often be warmer and wetter than dry, inland areas. If you live in a mountainous area, your climate is probably cooler and more extreme than an area at sea level. Read on to learn about the climate zone you live in.

**Polar climates** occur in the polar regions, e.g. the Arctic or Alaska, and in the highest mountains. Here, the temperature can be as low as  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Because it is always snowy and icy, the ground is always frozen.



In most of Europe and North America you will find a **warm temperate climate**. It isn't too cold in winter (about  $10^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) or too hot in summer (up to about  $30^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). People often call this a Mediterranean climate.



**Tropical climates** in countries such as Brazil usually have a high temperature all year round, but it also rains a lot. Average temperatures are  $32^{\circ}\text{C}$  and annual rainfall can be as much as 2,000 mm.

**Cool temperate climates** generally occur south of the Arctic and across northern Europe and Canada. Here the winters are longer and colder than in warm climates.

**Dry climates** have very low rainfall and in some places it doesn't rain at all. The daytime temperature can reach  $50^{\circ}\text{C}$  in summer but in winter this falls to  $10\text{--}15^{\circ}\text{C}$ . A desert such as the Sahara has this climate.



**Monsoon climates** have two seasons – wet and dry – but it is always warm. If you visit India in June–September, you will probably experience a thunderstorm or two, as this is their rainy season.



Finally, some countries have different climates within them. Australia is one of these with its arid hot desert in the centre, tropical north and temperate southern regions. So if you are planning a holiday there, you should choose your season and destination carefully.

**3** Order the letters to make a place from the text. Then match 1–6 with a–f.

- 1 raSaah tsreDe \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 ksAala \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 dIani \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 perEuo \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 adanCa \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 lrzBai \_\_\_\_\_

- a) monsoon climate \_\_\_\_
- b) cool temperate climate \_\_\_\_
- c) warm temperate climate \_\_\_\_
- d) tropical climate \_\_\_\_
- e) dry climate \_\_\_\_
- f) polar climate \_\_\_\_

**4** Read the text again. Choose the correct word or phrase.

- 1 If you live in the mountains, the weather will be **warmer** / **colder**.
- 2 Polar climates are very cold and have a lot of **snow** / **wind**.
- 3 Most of Europe has a **warm** / **cool** temperate climate.
- 4 Deserts **always** / **sometimes** have very high temperatures.
- 5 Monsoon climates have a lot of thunderstorms in the **rainy** / **dry** season.
- 6 Australia has a tropical climate zone in the **north** / **south**.

**5** Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- 1 Which climate zone is your country in? Describe your usual weather patterns.
- 2 If you could live anywhere in the world, which type of climate would you prefer?

**DID YOU KNOW?**

- California's Death Valley holds the record for the highest reliably reported air temperature in the world with 56.7°C in July 1913. Meanwhile, the coldest place on Earth is the East Antarctica Plateau which can reach –92°C on a clear winter's night.

**PROJECT**

- 6** Research a climate zone, either one of those mentioned in the text or another one that interests you. Work in a group and find out what the weather is like and what the geographical features are, etc. Use photos, maps or diagrams to illustrate your findings.

- 7** Present the information to the class.

**VOCABULARY FOCUS**

**annual** [adj]: yearly; over a period of one year

**arid** [adj]: very dry due to lack of rain

**cool** [adj]: quite cold

**destination** [n]: the place where you are going

**extreme** [adj]: very unusual or severe

**occur** [v]: to happen

**temperate** [adj]: mild, neither very hot nor very cold

**zone** [n]: a particular area

- 1 Work in pairs. Look at the photos and describe the buildings. Is there anything unusual about them?
- 2 Read the text. List four ways in which these buildings are friendly to the environment.

# LET'S GO GREEN!

Nowadays, architects are building more and more eco-friendly buildings in the UK for people to live, work and study in. Let's look at a weird and wonderful eco-home in Wales and an award-winning eco-school in England, and find out how they're making our future greener.

## The Hobbit House ▼

Have you ever wanted to live closer to nature? Well, in Crymych in rural Wales, there's an eco-village which currently has nine houses in it. They were built using the most up-to-date green technology and environmentally-friendly designs. The Hobbit House is one of them. With its round structure, grass roof and hillside location, it actually looks like the home of the famous hobbit, Bilbo Baggins!

The house took four months to build and was made from natural and recycled materials, like wood, stone and mud. It has straw in the floor, walls and roof for insulation. Plastic sheets and mud on the roof keep out the rain. The grass on the roof also insulates the building, keeping it warm in winter and cool in summer. The roof has features such as solar panels to provide energy and skylights to bring in natural daylight too.

There's a living room, a bedroom, a bathroom and a kitchen with a fridge that keeps cool thanks to a supply of cold air from under the house. Though small, each room has typical items such as a sofa, bookcase and armchair. The building is a really impressive structure and was designed with the environment in mind because it causes hardly any pollution. There aren't many homes like it at the moment, but hopefully there will be in the future.



## The eco-friendly school ▲

Howe Dell primary school in Hatfield is involved in an experiment to make its building harmless to nature. For the pupils, helping the environment is very important and they do everything they can to be green. This includes going to school on foot and developing fingerprint technology to replace library cards in order to save paper.

The school was designed with thick walls and windows to reduce heat loss and large windows to bring in lots of light. The water in the toilet areas and canteen is heated by solar panels, and electricity is proved by a wind turbine. The roof is covered in plants that provide insulation and it's also a living classroom for pupils to study the natural habitat of insects in biology lessons.

The school is always thinking of new ways to be eco-friendly: it has toilets that flush rainwater, sinks made from recycled plastic yoghurt pots and desks that are made from drainpipes! It really is an example of what other schools should be like.

It's important to be green for our future, and it's often the small changes that make a big difference



**3** Read the text again. Then read the sentences and decide which building(s) they describe. Circle H (eco-home), S (eco-school) or B (both).

- 1 The grass roof insulates the building. H / S / B
- 2 Insulation for the building includes straw and mud. H / S / B
- 3 Energy is provided by solar panels. H / S / B
- 4 Power is provided by wind energy. H / S / B
- 5 The building will cause very little pollution. H / S / B
- 6 Recycled rainwater is used in this building. H / S / B

**4** Match the features of the buildings with their purpose (1-5).

desks made from drainpipes | grass  
large windows | mud | plastic sheets  
rainwater | skylights | solar panels | straw  
thick walls | thick windows | wind turbines

- 1 provide energy: solar panels ,  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 provide insulation: \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 stop rain entering: \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 use recycled materials: \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 provide natural light: \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
\_\_\_\_\_

**5** Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

- 1 Do you know any eco-friendly buildings in your town or city? If so, what types of buildings are they? How were they designed and what were they made from?
- 2 Do you think eco-buildings are a good idea?

#### DID YOU KNOW?

- There are some eco-friendly buildings around the world with unusual designs, such as a home in Avila, Spain, which is made from four empty shipping containers and a home on a farm in Arizona, USA, that is made from empty grain silos! Eco-homes like these are both cost-effective and energy-efficient.

#### PROJECT

**6** Find out about another unusual building that uses green technology and eco-friendly materials. Describe the features of the building, how it was designed/made and how it is less harmful to the environment than most buildings.

**7** Present the information to the class.

#### VOCABULARY FOCUS

**architect [n]:** a person who designs buildings

**award-winning [adj]:** someone or something that has won a prize

**drainpipe [n]:** a pipe on a building that carries rainwater from the roof to the ground

**eco-friendly [adj]:** friendly to the environment

**experiment [n]:** an occasion to test a new idea or activity and find out the result

**feature [n]:** an important part of something

**flush [v]:** to make water pass through a toilet

**habitat [n]:** the place where a particular animal or plant lives or grows

**harmless [adj]:** not dangerous

**impressive [adj]:** something to admire because it is very good or shows great skill

**insulation [n]:** material used to prevent heat, cold, noise or electricity from passing through something

**skylight [n]:** a window in a roof or ceiling

**solar panel [n]:** equipment that uses energy from the sun to create power for a building

**straw [n]:** yellow stems of dried crops, such as wheat

**supply [n]:** a quantity of something that is available to use

**up-to-date [adj]:** including the most recent or modern information, ideas or knowledge

**weird [adj]:** strange or unusual



**KEY**



Daily life

 Exam task

For each question, choose the correct answer.


1

1

**Rainbow Café**

Our popular breakfasts are served all day at excellent prices!

Healthy breakfasts also available.



- A You can order this meal at any time.
- B This café serves only healthy food.
- C It's cheaper to eat here at less busy times.

2

Katie,  
Are you free to go into town tomorrow?  
I need to get Tamara a birthday present.  
You always know what she likes.  
Sam

7:16 pm

Sam is asking Katie

- A to go into town with Tamara.
- B to come to Tamara's birthday party.
- C to help choose a gift for Tamara.

3

**EMAIL**

Thank you for booking an appointment at Create Hairdressers.

Please arrive 10 minutes before your appointment time to discuss what you'd like us to do.

- A Customers may only have to wait 10 minutes to get an appointment.
- B Customers are asked to get to the hairdressers 10 minutes early.
- C Customers who arrive more than 10 minutes late could lose their appointment.

4

Ted,


I've gone to pick up Lucy from her dance class and will make us all a snack when we get back at 8 p.m.

Mum

- A Ted's mum has already eaten this evening.
- B Ted's mum plans to prepare a light meal later.
- C Ted's mum is cooking dinner before Lucy's dance class.

5

Please check your receipt before leaving the shop and tell the assistant if there is a problem.




- A Let the assistant know if you think there's a mistake on your receipt.
- B Keep your receipt because you might need to change something you bought.
- C Tell the assistant if you've lost the receipt for something you bought.

6

**Ken's Cakeshop**

We're closed early today for cleaning.

Open again normal times (9 a.m.-6 p.m.) tomorrow (Tuesday).



- A The shop plans to change its usual opening times.
- B The shop closes earlier on Mondays than Tuesdays.
- C The shop will be open as usual from Tuesday.

2a

Put the adverbs in the box in the correct order, from the most frequent (5) to the least frequent (1).

sometimes ..... never ..... often .....  
always ..... usually .....



2b

Rewrite the sentences with the words or expressions in brackets in the correct place.

1. My brother plays tennis. (once a week)

2. Do you have breakfast? (always)

3. I drive to work. (every day)

4. I visit my sister at the weekend. (often)

5. I go to bed before midnight. (never)

6. My family eat dinner at 6 p.m. (usually)

3

Write the questions. Then write your answer below using an adverb of frequency.

1. time | usually | get up? .....

2. get up | different | time | at the weekend? .....

3. what | eat | for breakfast? .....

4. where | have | lunch? .....



**Exam facts**

- In this part, you read six short texts. These are usually signs, notices, emails, text messages, notes or labels.
- For each question, you have to choose the sentence (A, B or C) that means the same as the text.



*Places and buildings*

1

Read the descriptions. Choose the correct answer, a, b or c.

1. You go here if you want to catch a plane.  
a station                      b airport                      c motorway
2. People go here to watch sports such as football.  
a roundabout                      b theatre                      c stadium
3. You can park your car in one of these.  
a garage                      b lift                      c underground
4. Businessmen and businesswomen work at desks in this place.  
a elevator                      b pharmacy                      c office
5. Parents take their children here so they can have fun.  
a playground                      b market                      c car park
6. Doctors and nurses work in this place.  
a guesthouse                      b hospital                      c factory
7. You can study lots of different subjects in this place.  
a college                      b supermarket                      c hotel
8. People work in this place and make things such as cars.  
a museum                      b cafeteria                      c factory

2

Complete the conversation with your own words.

Put ONE word in each space.

**Receptionist:** Good morning. Can I (1) ..... you?

**Nikki:** Yes please. I (2) ..... love to go to a museum. Is there one (3) ..... this hotel?

**Receptionist:** Yes. You can walk to it from here. Just go out of the hotel, (4) ..... left, walk for about ten minutes, and you will see it on your right.

**Nikki:** Thank you. (5) ..... it a big museum?

**Receptionist:** Yes, it's the national museum. It's very large, and there's a lot to see there.

**Nikki:** That's great. I want to buy some postcards. (6) ..... the museum have a shop?

**Receptionist:** Yes, it has a very nice shop. It (7) ..... books and gifts – and postcards, of course.

**Nikki:** Thank you very much for your help.

**Receptionist:** You're (8) ..... ! Just ask me if you need anything else while you're staying here.



*Exam tips*

- Read each short text and think about where you might see it. Who has written it? Who is it for? What is it about?
- Look for words or phrases in the sentences and the texts that have the same meaning.


**Exam task**

3


For each question, choose the correct answer.

1

Leave shoes, bags and towels in changing rooms



There's no space beside the pool



- A The changing rooms are now in a different place.
- B Swimmers can't take their stuff into the pool area.
- C Don't forget your shoes, bags and towels before you go.

2

**GUESTS**

Please give room keys to receptionist before leaving hotel if you are checking out or returning later.

- A Guests should only return room keys on the last day of their visit.
- B If there's no-one at reception, guests should keep their room keys with them.
- C The hotel looks after the room keys when guests go out for the day.


3

The sports centre phoned to say students can help in reception this summer. Can you meet the manager next Monday at 2 p.m. in the café?

- A The sports centre manager is looking for students to do reception work.
- B There are summer jobs in the sports centre café starting from next week.
- C The sports centre has holiday jobs for students to work as sports coaches.

4

Please use stairs as lift not working



For customers with children, nearest lift 20 metres

- A There are no lifts working at the moment.
- B This lift is only for people with children.
- C Customers should take the stairs or another lift.

5

**Visitor Notice**

Please do not make or take phone calls in the hospital building



- A Visitors' phones won't work inside the hospital building.
- B Visitors should speak to hospital staff if they need to use a phone.
- C Visitors mustn't use their phones anywhere inside the hospital.

6

Door on this floor for staff only

Exit for museum visitors on first floor



What does this notice say?

- A The way out of the museum is on this floor.
- B Visitors should use a different door to leave the museum.
- C Ask a member of staff to show you where to leave the museum.

**Services**

1

Complete the sentences below with the words from the box.

bank	café	chemist	dentist	hotel
library	post office	tourist information		

- I'm going to the ..... to buy a stamp.
- Is the ..... open today? I need to get some cash.
- My tooth hurts. I think I should make an appointment with my .....
- I'm going to the ..... to borrow a book about insects.
- I've got my flight, but I still need to book a room in a ..... for my holiday.
- Is there a ..... near here? I need to buy some medicine.
- I booked a tour of the city at the ..... centre.
- Let's go to that new ..... They make great hot chocolate.


2

Read the signs. Put the number in the correct part of the table.

Bank	Tourist information centre	Library
.....	.....	.....

1. *Please try to return books to the correct shelf. Thank you.*


5.  **DVDs**  
**£1.50**  
for one week.


2.  **Need to find a room in a hotel? We can book one for you.**

6.  **Computer course for beginners.**  
**Starts Monday.**

3.  **Information about train and bus times at this desk only.**

7. **Lost your credit card?**   
**Call this number immediately.**  
 **970097 86809**

4. **Need to borrow money today?**   
Speak to a member of staff.

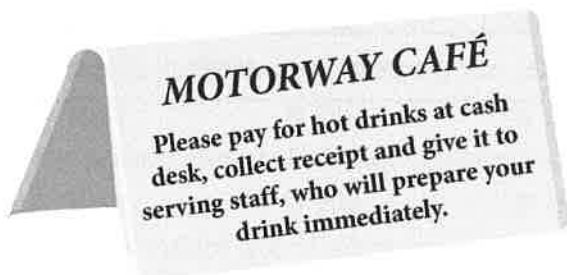
8. **Please pay for maps in cash.** 

## Exam task

3

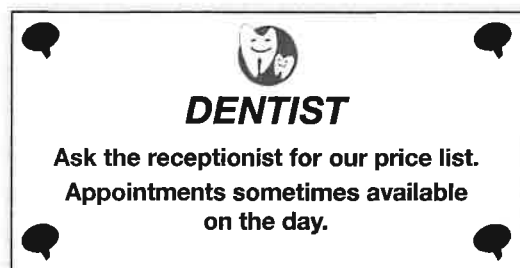
For each question, choose the correct answer.

1



- A If you're only buying hot drinks, please pay in cash.
- B The waiters will tell you how much to pay for your hot drinks.
- C Collect your hot drinks after you have paid for them.

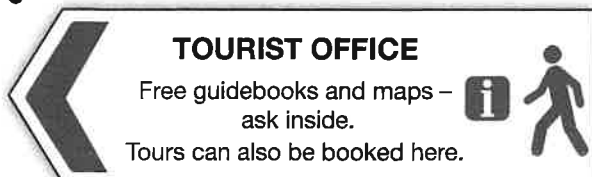
2



What does this notice say?

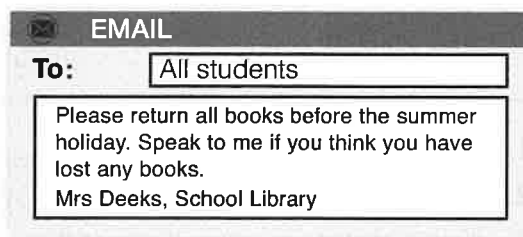
- A There are still some appointments available for today.
- B The dentist may see you if you haven't booked an appointment.
- C When you book an appointment, we can't tell you how much it will cost.

3



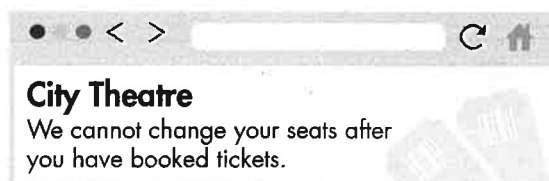
- A Buy a guidebook from the tourist office.
- B Collect a map from the tourist office.
- C Tours leave from the tourist office.

4



- A See Mrs Deeks if you can't find the books you borrowed.
- B Tell Mrs Deeks if you plan to keep your library books until next term.
- C Speak to Mrs Deeks if you don't know what to read during the holiday.

5



What can't theatre customers do?

- A choose where they sit before they book
- B get their money back on tickets
- C ask for different seats after they've paid

6



- A Dan doesn't think they'll visit every shop in the shopping centre on Saturday.
- B Dan doesn't think James will like the size of the shopping centre.
- C Dan doesn't know how to get to the shopping centre.

## Get it right!

Look at the sentence below. Then try to correct the mistake.

The weather is very beautiful and I stay often on the beach.



**The natural world**

1

Match each word in the box to the correct definition.

desert    field    forest    island    lake    mountains    plants    river

1. a large area of water, often in a park .....
2. a very large area which has lots of trees in it .....
3. a piece of land with water all around it .....
4. trees and flowers are examples of these .....
5. a very dry area where it doesn't rain much .....
6. a long area of water that often ends in the sea .....
7. a farmer grows things or puts his animals here .....
8. these are very tall and often have snow at the top .....



**Exam facts**

- In this part, you read three short texts.
- You have to answer seven questions.
- For each question, match the sentence to the correct text (A, B or C).



**Exam task**

2

Read the article about three people who are interested in nature. Answer the questions. For questions 1–7, choose A, B or C.

**My love of nature**

**A Sarah**

When I was a child at school, I collected books about nature. My classmates and friends all spent their free time playing computer games, so to them I suppose I was a bit strange. I loved learning about animals from other countries, but as I got older I found out that my own country has interesting nature too, and that's what I like studying now. I do lots of drawings of nature, and I put them on my blog.

**B Pilar**

I love birds and animals because of all the visits to forests and lakes we made when I was at school. It's a shame that things have changed so much now. In my opinion, children these days don't learn enough about nature, so lots of them are afraid of insects, for example. I have a great job because of my love of nature. I'm a nature photographer. It's brilliant, except for the early mornings!

**C Lia**

A few years ago I read a blog with beautiful photos of animals, birds and plants, which made me start really looking at what lives around us. It was just a hobby at first, but now it's my job as I visit schools and give talks about nature. I love it. The only problem is if I am asked to draw a picture. I enjoy it, but I'm terrible at drawing! I'm going to take some lessons to try to get better.

- 1 Who became interested in nature from seeing someone else's blog?  
A Sarah                      B Pilar                      C Lia
- 2 Who says there is something about her job that she doesn't like?  
A Sarah                      B Pilar                      C Lia
- 3 Whose friends thought that her hobby was unusual?  
A Sarah                      B Pilar                      C Lia
- 4 Who became interested in nature because of school trips?  
A Sarah                      B Pilar                      C Lia
- 5 Who says that the type of nature she is interested in has changed?  
A Sarah                      B Pilar                      C Lia
- 6 Who wants to improve her pictures of nature?  
A Sarah                      B Pilar                      C Lia
- 7 Who thinks that young people should learn more about nature at school?  
A Sarah                      B Pilar                      C Lia

3

Complete the conversation with phrases from the boxes.

- Adam:** Do you live in a town, Ben?
- Ben:** No, in the countryside. And I love it.
- Adam:** (1) ..... I lived in the countryside when I was a child, but I prefer towns.
- Ben:** Oh! Why is that?
- Adam:** Well, in the countryside you're so far away from schools, shops and friends' houses.
- Ben:** (2) ..... You get more exercise because you have to walk more!
- Adam:** (3) ..... You spend a lot of time in your car, driving everywhere!
- Ben:** But the traffic is much worse in towns. Towns are too noisy and busy.
- Adam:** (4) ..... The countryside is boring!
- Ben:** (5) ..... You can go walking, cycling, fishing – there are lots of things to do!
- Adam:** Yes – I can do them during short visits to the countryside! But I prefer to live in a town.
- Ben:** (6) ..... I'm sure the view from my window is better than yours.
- Adam:** You're probably right. It's true that the countryside is beautiful, but I enjoy being with lots of people.
- Ben:** And that's what I hate!
- Adam:** Everyone is different, I suppose.
- Ben:** We certainly are!



**Ben**

- a No, it isn't.
- b Yes, but that's a good thing.
- c Well, I don't.

**Adam**

- d No, you don't.
- e Really? I don't understand that.
- f That's what I like!



**Education and study**

**1** Complete the text below with the school subjects. Use the letters in brackets to help you.

There are lots of different subjects you can study at university. If you are good at **(1)** ..... (gauselnaĝ), you may decide to study French, Arabic or Chinese. If you like learning about how things work, then you probably find science subjects such as **(2)** ..... (gibyolo), **(3)** ..... (myshecrit) or **(4)** ..... (shycips) interesting. People who are interested in things which happened a long time ago should study **(5)** ..... (osriyth), but if you prefer learning about rivers, mountains and the different countries of the world, then you should choose **(6)** ..... (regopaygh). People who are good with numbers often decide to study **(7)** ..... (shacamitem), and those who want to become doctors take a course in **(8)** ..... (necmidei).



 **Exam task**

**2** For each question, choose the correct answer.

**My three favourite school subjects, by Annabelle Plume**

**A Biology**

I love biology because we discuss all kinds of important things. The time passes quickly in class and usually we don't finish our work before the end of the lesson. Then we have to take it home to do. That's OK because we download free videos and write notes about what we learn. Sometimes in class we use special equipment to do tests. I really enjoy this activity because we're allowed to choose who we work with, and my two best friends and I can be together.

**B Geography**

I've always loved geography because I'm really interested in different places in the world. We sometimes go into the playground to draw the countryside around the school, but it's a pity we can't do trips to places like the beach or the mountains. The teacher gave everyone in the group a textbook to take home, but we had to get our own colouring pens and pay for a software program for drawing maps.

**C History**

I didn't use to enjoy history that much, but now I love watching programmes about the subject in my free time. So far this year, our group has been to two museums, and I think we'll visit a few other places before the end of the year. At the moment, we're studying the history of medicine and learning about some very strange medicines and equipment. The teacher gives us information and we have to write lots of notes in our exercise books. If we want, we can draw a few pictures for homework.

- 1 Which subject offers students several trips?  
A biology            B geography        C history
- 2 Which subject includes working in small groups?  
A biology            B geography        C history
- 3 Which subject needs extra equipment that students have to buy?  
A biology            B geography        C history
- 4 Which subject has a lot of homework?  
A biology            B geography        C history
- 5 Which subject has some lessons outdoors?  
A biology            B geography        C history
- 6 Which subject teaches students about something unusual?  
A biology            B geography        C history
- 7 Which subject includes watching videos?  
A biology            B geography        C history

3

Choose the correct form of the verb to complete each sentence.

1. I *broken / break / broke* my pen yesterday.
2. When I was little I didn't *known / know / knew* how to write.
3. I *ridden / rode / ride* my new bike to college yesterday.
4. I was so tired when I got home from school that I *lain / lie / lay* down and fell asleep.
5. I *took / taken / take* my exams last week.
6. We *given / give / gave* our teacher a present at the end of the year.
7. Did you *saw / see / seen* your friend at college?
8. I didn't *go / went / gone* to school until I was seven years old.



### Exam tips

- Quickly read the texts before you answer the questions.
- The questions are not in the same order as the information in the texts.
- Read the questions and the texts carefully.
- Don't think an answer is right just because you see the same word in the text and the question.



**Travel and holidays**

1

**Complete the advice about plane travel. The first letter of each word is given to help you.**

If you are going to travel to a different country, you need to have a **(1) p** .....  
 When you are packing, try not to put too much in your **(2) l** ..... Try to get to the **(3) a** ..... a few hours before your flight, so that you won't **(4) m** ..... it, and so that you get a good **(5) s** ..... on the plane. Take something to read, as there may be a **(6) d** ..... if the flight is late, or if the weather is bad. During the flight, be polite to other **(7) p** ..... and remember to listen to the instructions which the **(8) p** ..... and other airline staff give you.



**Exam task**

2

**For each question, choose the correct answer.**

**My last holiday**

**A Max**

I went on holiday with my friends. The flight was fine, but it took two hours by bus to get to the hotel – I didn't enjoy that! The hotel was noisy and the staff weren't friendly, but it didn't matter because we spent all our time on the beach, a short walk away. We tried lots of new dishes in the restaurants in the town. It was hard to sleep with such high temperatures, but we had a fantastic time, and the best thing was, we spent almost nothing once we arrived!

**B Felipe**

The drive to our hotel from the airport was along lovely country roads. The hotel my wife and I stayed in was quite expensive. The people who worked there were wonderful, but I wasn't so sure about the hotel restaurant – the desserts were fine, but the main courses weren't very good. It was cloudy and rainy most days, but it didn't matter at all because we went to walk in the countryside, not to lie on a beach.

**C Nikhil**

My family and I drove across the USA last year. We stayed in lots of different hotels. I don't know how much we spent because my parents paid. There was a lot of driving, but my dad enjoyed that. The weather was fantastic, and I couldn't believe the differences in what people ate from place to place. It was good to be with the family, because there was always someone to talk to, or to do things with.

- 1 Who was surprised about the variety of food on holiday?  
A Max                      B Felipe                      C Nikhil
- 2 Who thought that part of their journey was too long?  
A Max                      B Felipe                      C Nikhil
- 3 Who liked travelling with a group of people?  
A Max                      B Felipe                      C Nikhil
- 4 Who was happy with the cost of their holiday?  
A Max                      B Felipe                      C Nikhil
- 5 Who thought the hotel staff were good?  
A Max                      B Felipe                      C Nikhil
- 6 Who says that the weather was a problem at times?  
A Max                      B Felipe                      C Nikhil
- 7 Who was unhappy with some of the food they ate?  
A Max                      B Felipe                      C Nikhil

3



**Track 1 Listen to the conversations. Are the sentences TRUE or FALSE?**

1. The woman needs to drive north to get to the airport. ....
2. The man needs to go straight on at the roundabout. ....
3. The restaurant is a long way from the hotel. ....
4. The man knows a faster way to get to the beach. ....
5. The man and the woman need to go south. ....
6. The man and the woman need to turn left to get to the market. ....
7. The hotel is on the road where the man already is. ....
8. The woman needs to turn right immediately. ....



***Get it right!***

**Look at the sentence below. Then try to correct the mistake.**

I've seen my brother yesterday.



**Social interaction**

1

Complete the questions with the correct question word(s).

- 1. .... is that, sitting near the door?
- 2. .... do you come here? Once a week?
- 3. .... bag is that, on the chair?
- 4. .... of these songs shall we listen to first?
- 5. .... have you lived here?
- 6. .... do you think we should do?
- 7. .... did you buy that hat? I'd like to get one.
- 8. .... will we see you again?



**Exam facts**

- In this part, you read a longer text.
- There are five questions and you have to choose the right answer (A, B or C).
- The questions test understanding of main ideas or detailed information.



**Exam task**

2

For each question, choose the correct answer.

HOME
FEATURES
ABOUT ME
CONTACT ME

SEARCH

**13-year-old Alessandra talks about her favourite chatroom, Teen-Age**

I joined a chatroom called Teen-Age last month. A classmate read about it in a magazine and told me all about it. She said it's a really great way to make friends with people in other countries. And she was right!

Everyone on the chatroom is a teenager. We share information about home life, music and films. Friends that I chat to often ask me about school life in Britain. One friend in Spain sometimes asks me to write the words of English songs for her. My favourite thing is finding out how to prepare food people eat in different countries.

Some of my friends on Teen-Age live on the other side of the world, so when I chat to them at lunchtime, it's nearly midnight where they are. My parents like it that I have international friends, but they get upset if I'm chatting to people all evening. They always want me to finish my homework first.

Chatting to people online is different from chatting to people at school. Some people at school aren't very friendly and don't want to talk much, but everyone I've met on Teen-Age is really nice. It's easy to talk about problems with them and they usually give good advice.

Many of my schoolfriends have joined several chatrooms, but I won't ever do that. I like the online friends I have now, so I'll keep using Teen-Age. If I have friends in different chatrooms, it'll be too hard to chat to them all.

- 1 How did Alessandra find out about the chatroom?
  - A from a magazine
  - B from someone at school
  - C from a friend in another country
- 2 What does Alessandra like doing best on the chatroom?
  - A learning new dishes
  - B talking about music and films
  - C finding out about schools around the world
- 3 What does Alessandra say about her parents?
  - A They worry that she is chatting online while she is at school.
  - B They think schoolwork is more important than chatting online.
  - C They don't understand why she goes on the chatroom every day.
- 4 What does Alessandra say about chatting to people online?
  - A She never tells them about problems.
  - B She gives them advice when they need it.
  - C She thinks they are very kind.
- 5 Alessandra thinks that in the future she will
  - A try other chatrooms.
  - B stop using all chatrooms.
  - C continue to use Teen-Age.



3

**Pieter asks his friend Sami to come to his house for dinner. Tick (✓) the two polite responses to the question.**

**Pieter:** Would you like to come to my house for dinner on Sunday, Sami?

**Sami:**

1. No, I can't.
2. Thanks, that's a lovely idea.
3. I'm afraid I'm busy then.
4. No, I wouldn't like to.



**Feelings, opinions and experiences**

1

Put the words into the correct order to make sentences and questions.

1. Japan / been / to / never / have / I / .....
2. here / she / worked / years / for / has / three / .....
3. mountain / have / a / climbed / ever / you / ? .....
4. just / mum / have / I / seen / your / .....
5. the / started / film / yet / has / ? .....
6. dinner / already / I / finished / have / my / .....
7. for / we / lived / months / have / here / two / .....
8. to / wanted / I / him / always / meet / have / ! .....

**Exam task**

2

For each question, choose the correct answer.

HOME
FEATURES
ABOUT ME
CONTACT ME

SEARCH

My name's Zack and I'm 14. This summer my dad and I travelled to Tanzania to climb Mount Kilimanjaro, Africa's highest mountain. My dad and I have climbed many mountains in Scotland since I was little, but, at 5,895 metres, Kilimanjaro was higher than anything I'd done before. Planning the trip took months, including a few weeks training in the mountains of Switzerland.

Over 20,000 people climb Kilimanjaro every year. Some do it because the countryside is very interesting, going from rainforest to snow at the top. Our reason was that you can get to the top without ropes and special climbing kit. There are also few storms on the mountain, but we only learnt that later.

Some UK travel companies only take people older than fifteen up Kilimanjaro. I thought this was strange because the youngest person to climb it was only seven. But a company in Tanzania with experience of climbing with kids allowed us to book their trip.

Climbing above 4,000 metres can be difficult because some people get terrible headaches. I was fine, but others in our group were sick, including Dad, so I had to look after him as we got near the top. The other problem was he lost his gloves. His hands got so cold, he couldn't feel them. This was dangerous, so I gave him my socks to keep his hands warm.

It took us six days altogether and it was my best experience ever. I'd do it again tomorrow.

- 1 Where did Zack and his dad practise before climbing Kilimanjaro?
  - A Scotland
  - B Switzerland
  - C Tanzania
- 2 Why did Zack and his dad want to climb Kilimanjaro?
  - A Not much equipment is needed.
  - B The countryside is beautiful.
  - C There aren't storms on the mountain.
- 3 What problem was there with booking the trip?
  - A Not many UK companies offer climbing holidays.
  - B It was hard to book with Tanzanian travel companies.
  - C Some travel companies thought Zack wasn't old enough.
- 4 What does Zack say about some of the other people in their group?
  - A They were surprised by how cold it was.
  - B They became ill as they climbed the mountain.
  - C They weren't wearing the right clothes for climbing.
- 5 What is the best title for this article?
  - A A difficult trip for me
  - B My dad's first big climb
  - C Helping my dad on the mountain



3

 **Track 2 Listen to the conversations and answer the questions.**

1. When will they go shopping? .....
2. Do the speakers agree with each other? .....
3. Does the man like his new phone? .....
4. What time will they leave? .....
5. Did the woman like the film? .....
6. What do they decide to eat? .....
7. What will the man wear? .....
8. Does the man prefer his laptop or the woman's laptop? .....



 **Exam tips**

- You have to answer a question or complete a sentence.
- You will read information about all three answers (A, B and C), but only one is correct.
- Don't choose an answer just because you see the same words as in the text.





**Hobbies and leisure**

**1** Complete these sentences with the correct word. The first letter of each word is given to help you.

1. A cinema is a place where people go to watch f .....
2. If you want to see a p ..... you can go to a theatre.
3. My hobby is photography. I've just bought a new c .....
4. My younger brother loves c ..... and he wants to be a chef when he's older.
5. I'm going out for a m ..... tonight, to my favourite restaurant.
6. I'm interested in history. I often go to a m ..... to look at things from the past.
7. My friend spends a lot of time on his computer playing v ..... games.
8. I play the piano. Do you play a musical i .....

**2** Read the sentences in italics. Then choose the correct meaning.

1. *Please try to return books to the correct shelf. Thank you.*
  - A Put books back in the correct place.
  - B Bring books back at the correct time.
2. *Need to find a room in a hotel? We can book one for you.*
  - A We help people who want to work in a hotel.
  - B We help people who want to stay in a hotel.
3. *Information about bus and train times at this desk only.*
  - A Buy bus and train tickets here.
  - B Find out when to catch a bus or train here.
4. *Please pay for maps in cash.*
  - A Use coins or notes to buy a map here.
  - B Use a bank card to buy a map here.
5. *Computer course for beginners. Starts Monday.*
  - A The computer course begins on Monday.
  - B The computer course finishes on Monday.
6. *Lost your credit card? Call this number immediately: 970097 86809.*
  - A Phone this number if you can't find your credit card.
  - B Phone this number if your credit card isn't working.

**Get it right!**

Look at the sentence below. Then try to correct the mistake.

There are lots of things to see here, and I already saw the Statue of Liberty and the American Museum of Natural History.

## Exam task

3

For each question, choose the correct answer.

### Playing the drums

Beth Jones was only eight years old when she first tried playing the drums. This was during a lunchtime music club at school, which she only went to because it was cold and rainy. Also her friends were in the playground playing hockey – a sport that Beth hated. Of all the musical instruments that the teacher had in the music room, the drums were the most interesting to Beth. She thought it was cool that there were many different shapes and sizes of drums, and she wanted to hit them, to see what they sounded like.

Now Beth is thirteen and gives concerts around the country. She also has her own YouTube channel and gets over a million hits a year. What's amazing is that Beth hasn't ever been to a drum lesson. 'You can learn anything on the internet, so I've never felt it was important for me to take classes,' explains Beth.

Giving concerts wasn't easy for Beth at the beginning because usually she only played drums alone in her bedroom when she came home from school.

At her first concert, she played in a band with adults. She could feel hundreds of pairs of eyes looking at her, and that made her feel frightened.

So, does Beth enjoy being famous now? 'I didn't plan to be famous,' she says.

'All I want is to show others what I love. I don't think I'm someone special.

I just want everyone to have a great time at my concerts.'



- 1 Why did Beth go to the music club at her school?
  - A She was too ill to play hockey outside.
  - B She wanted something to do one lunchtime.
  - C Her friends were away from school on a sports trip.
- 2 What is the writer explaining in the first paragraph?
  - A Why Beth chose the drums and not another instrument.
  - B Why the music teacher wanted Beth to try the drums.
  - C Why Beth thought the drums were so hard to play.
- 3 What does Beth say about drum lessons?
  - A She is sometimes sorry she didn't take lessons.
  - B She thinks lessons can be useful for some people.
  - C She has always thought she doesn't need lessons.
- 4 What do we learn about Beth's first concert?
  - A It was scary because many people were watching her.
  - B It was easier playing in a band than at home alone.
  - C It was difficult to be in a concert and do her schoolwork.
- 5 What do we learn about Beth in the final paragraph?
  - A Being a young drummer makes her feel special.
  - B She hopes people enjoy themselves at her concerts.
  - C Her life has changed a lot since she became famous.

**Sports and games**

1a

Put the words for sports and games into the correct part of the table.

chess	exercise	fishing
football	golf	karate
	swimming	tennis



go	play	do
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....

1b

Look at the table. Are there any rules about which verb to use with which nouns? Can you add more words for sports or games to the table?

 **Exam task**

2

Read the article about tennis.

Choose the best word (A, B or C) for each space.

**Tennis**

The English name 'tennis' comes from the French word 'tenez', which means 'to hold'. When the first game of tennis was played hundreds of years ago, people (1) ..... their hands to hit the ball. Now, of course, we have rackets (2) .....

In the (3) ..... game of tennis, a player (4) ..... to get four points to win a game, and six games to win a set. In women's tennis, a player wins the match by winning two sets. This is (5) ..... the same in men's tennis but, in some competitions, men need to win three sets to win a match.

If two people play against each other, it is called a singles match. If there are two players on each side, it is (6) ..... a doubles match.

- |                |           |             |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1 A gave       | B used    | C took      |
| 2 A anymore    | B else    | C instead   |
| 3 A available  | B ready   | C modern    |
| 4 A has        | B should  | C must      |
| 5 A especially | B usually | C extremely |
| 6 A called     | B known   | C said      |

3a

Complete the sentences with the correct alternatives.

1. When I *cycled / was cycling* in the park, I *saw / was seeing* Cristina.
2. I hurt my leg while I *played / was playing* football.
3. I *called / was calling* you at 8 o'clock last night, but you didn't answer. What *did you do / were you doing?*
4. We were so late for the match that they *already played / were already playing* when we arrived.
5. We *played / were playing* tennis when it started raining, so we *stopped / were stopping*.
6. *Did you go / Were you going* skiing when you were in Austria?
7. I *forgot / was forgetting* to bring my badminton racket, but Fay had two so she *lent / was lending* me one.
8. I *met / was meeting* a really interesting man when I *fished / was fishing* yesterday.

3b

Write a few sentences about a sport that you like.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**Exam facts**

- In this part, you read a short text – for example from an encyclopedia or article.
- There are six missing words in the text.
- You have to choose the correct word (A, B or C) to complete each space.



**Entertainment and media**

1

Match the definitions (1–8) to the musical words (a–h).

- 1. To play this instrument you have to hit it.
- 2. A group of people who play music together.
- 3. A person who plays an instrument.
- 4. Lots of songs together by the same band or artist.
- 5. You need to do this a lot when you learn to play an instrument.
- 6. You touch the black and white parts of this instrument to play it.
- 7. A musical play where people sing the words.
- 8. People do this with their music so that other people can listen to it.

- a practice
- b opera
- c drum
- d band
- e album
- f record
- g musician
- h keyboard

**Exam task**

2

For each question, choose the correct answer.

**A rock concert**

Famous groups don't come to my town very often, so when my brother (1) ..... me a poster for a concert by my favourite band, I was really (2) ..... We asked some friends if they wanted to join us, and we bought the tickets.



A few weeks later, we (3) ..... a bus to the concert, which was in a stadium in our town. We didn't know the first band who played as they weren't famous. I (4) ..... their music was OK, but it wasn't great. I couldn't wait for my favourite group to play. When they finally came onto the (5) ..... , everyone starting shouting. They played all of their best songs and, of course, the crowd all sang. I don't think I will (6) ..... forget that night.

- |   |             |               |          |
|---|-------------|---------------|----------|
| 1 | A took      | B explained   | C showed |
| 2 | A excited   | B interesting | C funny  |
| 3 | A travelled | B caught      | C went   |
| 4 | A want      | B suppose     | C hope   |
| 5 | A theatre   | B curtain     | C stage  |
| 6 | A still     | B already     | C ever   |

**3**

Read the suggestions. Choose the **TWO** correct answers from a, b or c.

1. Why don't we go to a museum at the weekend?  
a I won't do that at all.  
b I'd prefer to go to a concert.  
c OK, that sounds good.
2. Shall we have dinner together on Friday?  
a I'm busy then, but maybe another day?  
b I'm sorry, I'm busy then.  
c I don't think we will, no.
3. Let's watch a film.  
a No, we're not.  
b No, let's do something else.  
c No, not just at the moment.
4. How about going to a concert on Sunday?  
a Yes, I'd love to.  
b Yes, that's right.  
c Yes, that's a great idea.
5. Why don't you ask Maya to come to the opera?  
a I don't think she likes opera.  
b Because I don't like opera.  
c I might do that!
6. Shall we listen to some music?  
a Maybe later?  
b Yeah, lovely!  
c We shall not.
7. I'll take a photo, shall I?  
a No, don't worry.  
b Yes, you will.  
c No, I'll do it.
8. Let's go dancing at the weekend.  
a Sure, why not?  
b Yes, let's do.  
c That's not a bad idea!



### **Exam tips**

- Quickly read the text before you choose your answers.
- Try each word (A, B and C) in the space before you choose the correct answer.
- Read the whole sentence carefully when you choose an answer.



**Transport**

1a

Complete the table with the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives.

adjective	comparative	superlative
big	.....	.....
bad	.....	.....
fast	.....	.....
dirty	.....	.....
modern	.....	.....
healthy	.....	.....
popular	.....	.....
crowded	.....	.....

1b

Complete each sentence with a word from Exercise 1a.

- The traffic is ..... during the week than at weekends because everyone is going to work.
- Wow! I thought my car needed a wash, but yours is even ..... than mine!
- The trains in this city are the ..... I've even been on. There are so many people on them!
- I get home later in the evening now that I walk, but it's ..... for me than driving.
- There's a lot of space in this car – it's ..... than the one you had before.
- In cities which have a river, boats are quite a ..... way to get around.
- A hundred years ago, the ..... car in the world could only travel at 136 km/h.
- We have a lovely ..... railway station now – much better than the old one.



**Exam task**

2

For each question, choose the correct answer.

**Better ways to travel**

Millions of us use our cars every day to get to work, college or school. Travelling by car is fast and comfortable, but not (1) ..... for the world around us. So what should we do?

One possibility is to (2) ..... car journeys. If you have neighbours who need to travel to the same (3) ..... as you, why not go together in one car? Two or three people travelling together is a more intelligent idea than two or three cars (4) ..... the same journey with only one person in each car.

Of course, cars are not the only way to travel. It's usually possible to travel by bus, tram or train, (5) ..... in a town or city. And if your journey is short, what about walking or going by bike? You'll get fit and (6) ..... money too!



- |   |              |          |              |
|---|--------------|----------|--------------|
| 1 | A good       | B well   | C better     |
| 2 | A add        | B share  | C join       |
| 3 | A trip       | B map    | C place      |
| 4 | A bringing   | B making | C getting    |
| 5 | A absolutely | B really | C especially |
| 6 | A save       | B hold   | C keep       |

**3a**

Read the predictions about the future. Look at the underlined phrases and number them 1–5 (1 = most likely to happen, 5 = least likely to happen).

- a I think plane journeys will be shorter in the future. ....
- b It's possible that / Maybe we'll all have flying cars in the future. ....
- c I'm very sure / I'm certain that our journeys to work will be shorter because trains are getting faster. ....
- d I'm not sure if we'll still travel by train a hundred years from now. ....
- e I'm sure we won't use petrol in our cars for much longer. ....

**3b**

Write five sentences about what you think will happen to transport in the future. Use the phrases from Exercise 3a.

- 1. ....
- 2. ....
- 3. ....
- 4. ....
- 5. ....



**Get it right!**

Look at the sentences below and choose the correct one.

The most thing I like about it is the camera.

The thing I like most about it is the camera.





Daily life

1

Complete the gaps in the text with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

be	close	have	need
take	walk	want	work

Every day I wake up at 8 a.m., and (1) ..... a bus into town. I eat breakfast at a café, and then (2) ..... to my family's shop. I (3) ..... in the shop, helping my father. He (4) ..... the manager of the shop. We (5) ..... lunch at about 12:30 p.m. and Dad (6) ..... the shop at 5 p.m. I like my job, and I know Dad (7) ..... me, but in the future I (8) ..... to travel, so I'm saving money to pay for that.



Exam task

2

For each question, write the correct answer. Write ONE word for each gap.

Example: 0 in

● ● ●
[Reply](#)   [Forward](#)

Hi Jenni,  
 How are you? Is your new life (0) ..... Canada going well? And (1) ..... is your university course like? Have you made new friends? (2) ..... you think you might come back for a visit soon?  
 Clara

● ● ●
[Reply](#)   [Forward](#)

Hi Clara,  
 I'm fine, thanks. I've been here for a month now. It was quite difficult for the first few weeks (3) ..... I didn't know anyone, but now I know more people, I'm starting (4) ..... enjoy myself. I'm sure that I (5) ..... come home for a few weeks before the end of (6) ..... year, so see you in a few months.  
 Keep writing to me!  
 Jenni

3a

Complete Jenni's next email to Clara with the correct alternatives.

Reply   Forward

Hi Clara,  
You asked me (1) *that / what* I do every day. Well, I get up early (2) *because / so* my first class is (3) *at / in* 8 a.m. I drive to the university. (4) *After / When* I'm not in class, I usually go to the library to study, and I meet friends (5) *with / for* lunch. In the evenings, (6) *there / here* are concerts and sometimes parties. I go to some of (7) *they / them* with my friends, (8) *but / as* I also study a lot.  
Jenni

3b

Imagine that a friend has asked you what you do each day. Write an email to them about your typical day.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**Exam facts**

- In this part, you read one or two short texts. These are usually email messages.
- There are six missing words in the text(s).
- You have to write the six missing words.



## Exam task

3

For each question, write the correct answer. Write ONE word for each gap.

Example: 0 am / 'm

● ● ● [Reply](#) [Forward](#)

Hi Kris,  
I (0) ..... going cycling with my brother next Sunday.  
Would you like (1) ..... come? Don't worry if you don't have a good bike – we've got one you can borrow. We'll take a picnic, so we won't need to eat in a café.  
Let (2) ..... know if you want to come.  
Ali



● ● ● [Reply](#) [Forward](#)

Hi Ali,  
That's (3) ..... great idea. Thanks very much (4) ..... offering to lend me a bike, but I got a new one few weeks ago. I'll bring lunch and something to drink. (5) ..... there anything else that I should bring? Also, (6) ..... time do you think we'll be home? I'm going out in the evening.  
Kris

## Exam tips

- Quickly read the text(s) before you write the missing words.
- Look at the words that come before and after the space and think about what kind of word you need to write – for example, a noun, verb, preposition, etc.
- Only write one word in each space.
- When you finish, read the text(s) again to make sure they make sense.

**Travel and holidays**

1

Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Last year, I (1) ..... (go) on holiday to France. We (2) ..... (drive) there, which took a long time, but it (3) ..... (be) good because we (4) ..... (see) a lot of beautiful countryside on the way. We stayed in a lovely house which (5) ..... (have) a really big swimming pool. Every day we (6) ..... (get) up late and (7) ..... (spend) all day in the sun. We (8) ..... (eat) fantastic food too. I would like to go to the same place again next year.



**Exam task**

2

For each question, write the correct answer. Write ONE word for each gap.

Example: 0 at



Reply
Forward

Hi Mum and Dad,  
 I hope everything's OK (0) ..... home. I arrived in New Zealand yesterday. On the plane, I sat next (1) ..... a really nice woman who told me about (2) ..... of interesting places I could visit while I'm here. And I've found a place to stay (3) ..... isn't too expensive. I'm going to be in New Zealand for nearly (4) ..... month, and then I'm going to fly to (5) ..... USA.  
 Dad, did you ask your friend Patricia in San Francisco (6) ..... it's OK for me to stay with her next month?  
 I'll write again soon.  
 Sonia

3

Put the words in the correct order to make questions and sentences about holiday plans.



1. year / you / are / this / where / holiday / on / going / ?

2. to / the / we / be / at / by / airport / ten / need / .

3. year / like / to / next / to / Germany / would / I / go / .

4. airport / are / how / the / you / to / getting / ?

5. to / family / I / China / going / with / am / my / .

6. you / long / will / how / there / stay / ?

7. small / a / we / hotel / to / are / stay / in / going / .

8. by / you / yourself / going / are / travelling / ?

 **Get it right!**

Look at the sentence below. Then try to correct the mistake.

Now I write a postcard to you and then I'm going to have lunch at the new restaurant on the beach.



**Health and exercise**

**1** Read the email and the reply. Complete the reply with the correct alternatives.

Reply    Forward

Dear Richard,  
I would like to join the gym you go to. Where is it? Which activities does it offer? Can I go there with you soon?  
Ash

Reply    Forward

Dear Ash,  
The gym (1) *is / am* on Station Road. I usually (2) *taking / take* exercise classes there, (3) *but / so* yesterday I (4) *use / used* the pool. There (5) *are / is* exercise machines too. (6) *I'm going / I go* there tomorrow. Why (7) *aren't you coming / don't you come* with me?  
See you soon.  
Richard

**2a** Complete the tips about writing emails with the correct alternatives.

When you write an email to a friend, start the email with (1) *Dear / Fair* or (2) *Hey / Hi*, and then your friend's (3) *title / name*.  
To finish your message you can write (4) *'best / good wishes'* or 'see you (5) *soon / quickly*'.

**2b** Write a few sentences about your favourite kind of exercise.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Exam facts**

- In this part, you read a short text asking you for three pieces of information.
- The text may be a message or some notes.
- You have to write the three pieces of information in a short message.

**Exam task**



**3**

Your English friend Jo goes running every day. You want to go running with Jo.

Write an email to Jo:

- say when you want to run with Jo
- ask what time Jo goes running
- offer to show Jo a nice place to go running.

Write **25 words** or more.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....





**Personal identification**

1

Match the definitions (1–6) with the family words (a–f).

- 1. your mother's brother
- 2. your aunt's son
- 3. your father's mother
- 4. your son's daughter
- 5. your sister's son
- 6. your grandfather's son

- a grandmother
- b cousin
- c granddaughter
- d father
- e nephew
- f uncle

2

Complete the conversation with the information from the boxes (a–d).

- a 0648 546824.
- b The fifth of October, 2000.
- c Elsa Merton. That's M-E-R-T-O-N.
- d 116, Greenwood Road.



**Librarian:** You can join the library, but I need some information first. Can you tell me your full name, please?

**Elsa:** (1) .....

**Librarian:** Thank you. And where do you live, Elsa?

**Elsa:** (2) .....

**Librarian:** That's fine. Now – what's your date of birth?

**Elsa:** (3) .....

**Librarian:** OK. And finally, what's your phone number?

**Elsa:** (4) .....

**Librarian:** Thank you, Elsa. Here's your card and your book. Now I'll show you around the library.

 **Exam task**

**3**

Read the email from your English friend Maxi.

● ● ● Reply Forward

I've received a wedding invitation from your brother. It's so nice of him! Can you suggest a place in your city where I can stay? What do people usually wear to weddings in your country? What can I buy them for a present?

Maxi

**Write an email to Maxi and answer the questions.**

Write **25 words** or more.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

 **Exam tips**

- Read the instructions carefully to find out what you need to write.
- You must write all three pieces of information.
- When you finish your message, check your spelling and grammar.



**Entertainment and media**

1

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

actor	channel	exhibition	fan
movie	screen	stage	video games

- If you don't like the TV programme, change the .....
- My friend is a big ..... of that group. She goes to all their concerts.
- I love playing ..... online with my friends.
- I'm going to that photography ..... at the museum tomorrow.
- Let's see that film. Your favourite ..... is in it.
- The ..... at that new cinema is really big.
- I didn't have a good seat at the theatre. I was a long way from the .....
- Another word for a film is a .....

2

Add the punctuation (question marks, full stops, capital letters and apostrophes) to the sentences.

- Id like to go to that concert  
.....
- are you going to the party tonight  
.....
- my friend sara is going to be in a show  
.....
- this isnt carlas guitar  
.....
- ive never been to the opera  
.....
- i dont like that artist  
.....
- i think well need to buy a ticket  
.....
- do you know where i live  
.....



**Get it right!**

Look at the sentence below. Then try to correct the mistake.

I'm having a day off next week I would like to come to visit you.

**Exam task**



**3**

Your English friend Charlie has invited you to the cinema tomorrow, but you can't go.

Write an email to Charlie:

- tell Charlie that you are sorry
- explain why you can't go
- say which day you can go instead.

Write **25 words** or more.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Food and drink**

1a

Read the sentences about working in a restaurant. Choose the best word (A, B or C) for each space.

- The waiter speaks to each customer and writes their ..... in a notebook.  
 A order                      B menu                      C sign
- Sometimes the waiter needs to ..... to customers what is in the dishes.  
 A understand                B decide                    C explain
- The chef tries to ..... the food as quickly as possible.  
 A prepare                      B improve                    C cover
- When the food is ready, the waiter ..... it to the customers.  
 A leaves                        B serves                      C puts
- When the customers finish their meal, they ask the waiter for their .....  
 A price                         B bill                         C purse

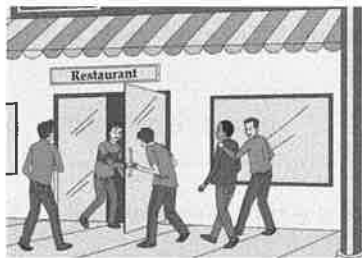
1b

Read the phrases below and decide who is speaking. Write W (waiter) or C (customer).

- Excuse me, could I have some water, please? .....
- That dessert comes with cream or ice cream. Which would you prefer? .....
- My food is delicious. Is yours nice too? .....
- I think I'm going to have a dessert. They're really good here. ....
- Are you ready to order now? .....
- Good evening. A table for two, please. ....
- Shall I take your plates now? .....
- I'd like an extra-large cheese and tomato pizza with chips, please. ....

2

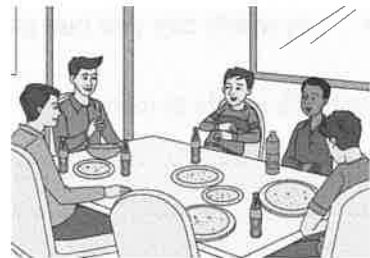
Look at the three pictures and read the story. Which picture does each sentence describe?



A



B



C

- The boys ate everything on the table and when they were finished, they felt really full! .....
- It was Johann's birthday, so he and his friends went to their favourite restaurant. ....
- They were all very hungry, so they ordered the largest pizzas on the menu. ....

**Exam task**

3

Look at the three pictures. Write the story shown in the pictures. Write 35 words or more.



.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Exam facts**

- In this part, you see three pictures.
- You have to write the story shown in the three pictures.
- Your story should be 35 words or more.



**Clothes**

1a

Read the descriptions of some words for clothes. What is the word for each one? The first letter is given to you. There is one space for each letter in the word.

- 1. You wear these on your hands. g \_ \_ \_ \_ \_
- 2. You wear this around your neck on a cold day. s \_ \_ \_ \_
- 3. You wear this in summer. It's cooler than a sweater. T \_ \_ \_ \_ \_
- 4. These are a type of trousers. j \_ \_ \_ \_
- 5. These are shoes you can wear for doing sports. t \_ \_ \_ \_ \_
- 6. You wear this on your head. c \_ \_
- 7. You wear this over your shirt, like a coat. j \_ \_ \_ \_

1b

Complete the sentences with the correct alternatives.

- 1. Remy, is this scarf *you / your / yours*?
- 2. *What / Who / Which* does this jumper belong to?
- 3. My cousin is only two, but she can already dress *herself / itself / yourself*.
- 4. I've brought a spare swimming costume because I thought *someone / anyone / no one* might forget theirs.
- 5. I can't find my belt. Do you have *this / one / it* I can borrow?
- 6. I need to buy some ties for work. I don't have *many / much / more*.

2

Look at these words and expressions from a story. Sort the words into three groups.

Finally	One day	Then	Last week
After that	In the end	Suddenly	On Saturday morning

1 Beginning of the story	2 Middle of the story	3 End of the story
..... ..... .....	..... ..... .....	..... ..... .....

**Exam task**

3

Look at the three pictures. Write the story shown in the pictures. Write 35 words or more.



.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Exam tips**

- You don't get extra marks for writing a very long story.
- You only need to describe what's happening in the three pictures.
- It's possible to use direct speech in your story.
- When you have finished your story, read it again to check spelling and grammar.





**The weather**

**1** Read the descriptions of some words about the weather. For each description, choose the correct word from the box.

storm      clouds      fog      rain      ice      dry      sunny

1. These are white, grey or black, and you can see them in the sky. ....
2. When the weather is very cold, water changes to this. ....
3. During one of these, you may hear thunder. ....
4. This is the opposite of wet. ....
5. When you can see the sun in the sky, we say the weather is this. ....
6. In this weather, it's difficult to see where you are going. ....
7. This is water that falls from the sky. ....

**2a** Match the comments about the weather (1-6) to the replies (a-f).

1. It's going to be hot today.
2. The weather was great at the weekend.
3. Do you think it'll rain later?
4. What's the weather like where you live?
5. I love the snow!
6. Did you hear the thunderstorm last night?

- a Me too. It's fun to play in.
- b Really? Oh, I'll change my clothes then.
- c No. I was asleep.
- d But it's so different today!
- e Yes, take your umbrella.
- f It's warm and sunny here, as usual.

**2b** Write a few sentences about the weather yesterday.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**Exam task**

3

Look at the three pictures. Write the story shown in the pictures. Write 35 words or more.



.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Get it right!**

Look at the sentences below. Which one is correct?

It was a beautiful sun day.

It was a beautiful sunny day.



## Services and places

1

Match the questions (1–10) to the answers (a–j).

1. When shall we meet?
2. What time does the next train leave?
3. When is your sister's birthday?
4. What time does the post office open?
5. When is your doctor's appointment?
6. How long have you lived in Sydney?
7. When do you play hockey?
8. Excuse me, what's the time please?
9. When did you meet your best friend?
10. What's your favourite day of the week?

- a At 8:30 a.m. every day.
- b At 6:15 p.m., outside the cinema.
- c At twenty to eight, on platform three.
- d In 2009. We were in the same class at school.
- e Saturday. I love the weekend!
- f Next Wednesday at 1:15 p.m.
- g On the 22nd of September.
- h On Tuesdays, in the sports centre.
- i Since 2014.
- j It's ten o'clock.



## Exam task

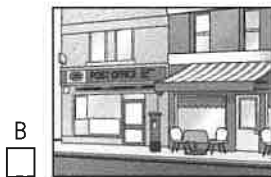
2



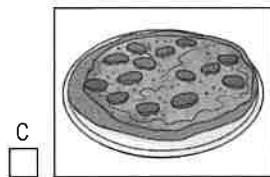
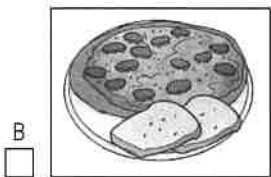
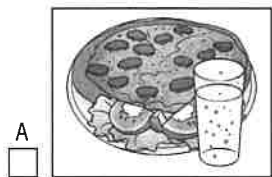
Track 3

For each question, choose the correct answer.

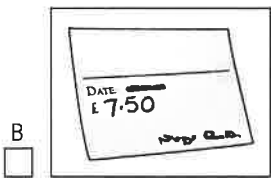
1 Where is the post office?



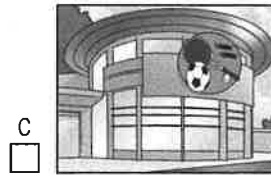
2 What does the man order?



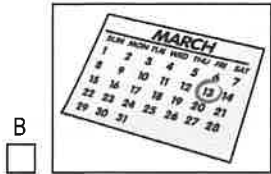
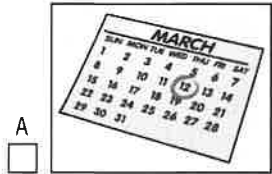
3 How much does the man spend?



4 Where are the girls going today?



5 When is the woman going to the dentist?



3

Match the words in the box to the sentences and questions.

cinema	dentist	hotel	library	museum	restaurant
sports centre	theatre	tourist information centre	train station		

- The paintings were discovered in Italy in 1843. ....
- Excuse me, what time does the play finish? .....
- Can I have a return ticket to Bradford, please? .....
- You are in room 321, on the third floor. Here is the key. Enjoy your stay. ....
- I'll have a chicken salad, please. ....
- Would you like a map of the city? .....
- Good morning. I've got an appointment at 4:30. ....
- What time does the aerobics class start? .....
- Let's buy tickets for the new James Bond film now! .....
- Can I borrow these books, please? .....

 **Exam facts**

- In this part, you listen to five short conversations.
- There are five questions with three pictures.
- You have to choose the right picture.



## Shopping and numbers

1

Complete the sentences with the numbers in the box.

eight    fifteen    seven    sixty    twelve    twenty-six    two hundred    thousand

- There are ..... days in a week.
- When it's 11:45, it is also a quarter to .....
- There are a ..... metres in a kilometre.
- I'm 24 and my sister is 16. She's ..... years younger than me.
- There are ..... seconds in a minute.
- Paula lives at 16 Brick Lane and her friend lives next door at number .....
- There are ..... letters in the English alphabet.
- Our house was built in 1793. It's over ..... years old.



## Exam task

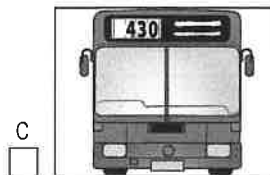
2



Track 4

For each question, choose the correct answer.

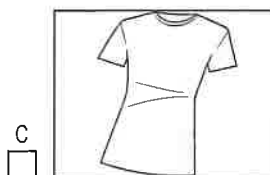
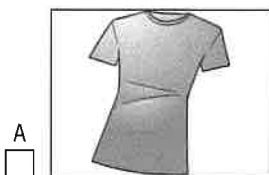
- 1 Which bus goes to the supermarket?



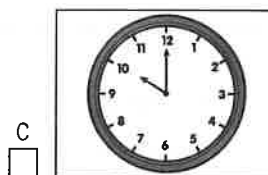
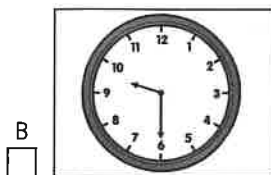
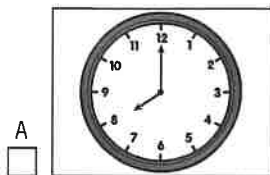
- 2 What time does the shop close?



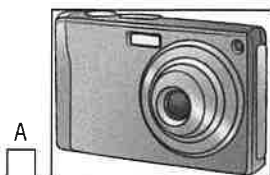
- 3 Which T-shirt does the woman buy?



4 What time does the bookshop close on Saturday?



5 What did the man buy?



3

Read the descriptions and complete the words. The first letter is given to you. There is one space for each letter in the word.

1. If you haven't got any cash you will need to pay with this. c \_\_\_\_\_ c \_\_\_\_\_
2. When you buy something the shop assistant will give you this. r \_\_\_\_\_
3. This is a shop with many floors where you can buy lots of different things. d \_\_\_\_\_  
s \_\_\_\_\_
4. These are people who buy things in a shop. c \_\_\_\_\_
5. There are 100 pennies in one of these. p \_\_\_\_\_
6. You can buy food and other things in this shop. s \_\_\_\_\_
7. You might do this before you buy new clothes. t \_\_\_ (them) \_\_\_
8. If you like reading, you might go to this shop. b \_\_\_\_\_
9. Shoppers in the USA spend these. d \_\_\_\_\_
10. When you are shopping you can ask this person for help. a \_\_\_\_\_

**Exam tips**

- Read the questions very carefully. Underline the most important words in the question.
- The people will talk about what you can see in all three pictures, but only one is right.
- The first time you listen, choose your answers. The second time you listen, check that your answers are right.



## Education and study

1

Choose the correct alternative in each sentence.

1. What time *did / does* the class finish last week?
2. Fran is always tired on Saturdays so she *got up / gets up* late.
3. *Was / Does* your mum work in a bank?
4. Max *bought / is going to buy* a new mobile phone later.
5. Kate *sends / sent* me an email two days ago.
6. *Did you / Are you going to* visit your grandmother tomorrow?
7. I sometimes *meet / am going to meet* my friends at the beach.
8. *Is / Was* Ben wearing a hat at the party last night?
9. I think *I'll go / I went* shopping tomorrow.
10. Matt usually walks home but this afternoon he is *going to ride / rides* his bike.



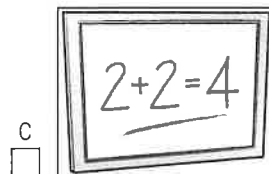
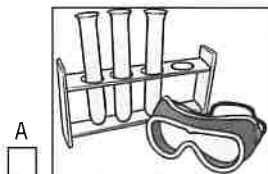
## Exam task

2

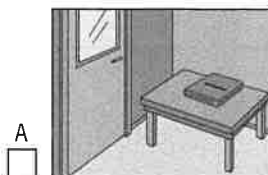
Track 5

For each question, choose the correct answer.

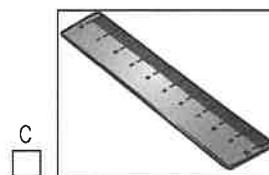
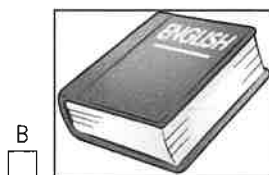
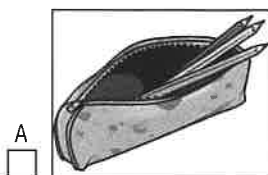
1 What is the boy's favourite subject?



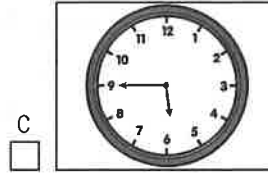
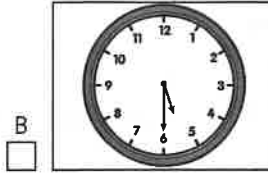
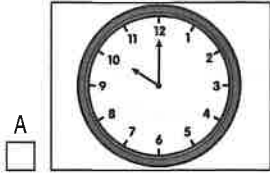
2 Where does the girl put the dictionary?



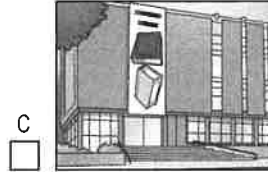
3 What does the boy lend the girl?



4 What time does the TV programme start?



5 Where does the medical student have lessons?



3

Read about Teresa's day, then choose the correct alternative.

*Hello. My name's Teresa. I am a teacher in a secondary school. I usually wake up at 7:30, have a shower and get dressed. Then I have toast for breakfast. I always listen to the news on the radio while I am having breakfast. I leave the house at 8:30 and I cycle to work. I start at 9:00 and school finishes at 4:15. After work, I often go to the pool. When I get home, I make dinner, and eat it in the living room while I watch TV. After dinner I do the washing up, walk my dog on the beach and sometimes phone my friends. I usually go to bed at 10:30. I love reading travel magazines and always look at them before I go to sleep.*

1. Teresa works in a bank / school.
2. She has cereal / toast for breakfast.
3. While she is having breakfast, she listens to music / the news.
4. Teresa goes to work by bike / car.
5. She starts work at eight thirty / nine o'clock.
6. After work, she often shops / swims.
7. She watches TV while she is cooking / eating.
8. She eats dinner in the living room / kitchen.
9. She walks her dog in the park / on the beach.
10. She usually reads emails / magazines before she goes to sleep.

### Get it right!

Look at the sentences below and choose the correct one.

Next week, I'm going to an interesting place near your town.

Next week, I go to an interesting place near your town.





**Making plans**

1a

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

autumn    birthday    century    clock    diary    evening    weekly    yesterday

1. Today is Wednesday, so ..... was Tuesday.
2. The big ..... on the wall in my office says it's 5:15 p.m.
3. If you have a meeting every Monday, it's a ..... meeting.
4. There are one hundred years in a .....
5. The book where people write their appointments is called a .....
6. .... is the season when the leaves fall from the trees.
7. People usually give you presents on your .....
8. The time between the afternoon and the night is called the .....

1b

Complete the table with the words and phrases in the box.

every day    Friday morning    half past three    January  
 last year    Mondays    the afternoon    the moment  
 the weekend    tomorrow    2013    15th May

at	in	on	no preposition
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....

**Exam task**

2

Track 6

For each question, write the correct answer in the gap.

Write one word or a number or a date or a time.

You will hear a woman talking about renting a boat for a holiday.

**Riverboat Holidays**

Name of boat: Moonlight

Boat is for: (1) between two and ..... people

Dates available this year: 1st–31st (2) .....

Total cost: (3) £ ..... per week

Must bring: (4) .....

Phone number to book: (5) .....

3

Read the conversation. Choose the best word for each space, a, b or c.

**Mario:** Hello Tanya. Where are you **(1)** .... to go on holiday this year?

**Tanya:** I **(2)** .... going to go to Tenerife in August.

**Mario:** That sounds fun! Will it be hot?

**Tanya:** Yes, it **(3)** .... I've bought a new hat and some sunglasses.

**Mario:** Really? Who **(4)** .... you going to go with?

**Tanya:** With my friends Lara and Michelle.

**Mario:** My sister went to Tenerife last year. She said that the beaches are amazing.

**Tanya:** I know. But we **(5)** .... have a lot of free time to explore the island!

**Mario:** Why not? What are you going to do?

**Tanya:** We **(6)** .... going to study Spanish in a language school.

**Mario:** That sounds fun. Are you going **(7)** .... lessons every day?

**Tanya:** Yes, we are.

**Mario:** Do you think you **(8)** .... be in the same class as your friends?

**Tanya:** No, we **(9)** .... be, because my friends speak better Spanish than me.

**Mario:** **(10)** .... you send me a postcard?

**Tanya:** Yes, of course! What's your address?



- |             |            |           |
|-------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. a going  | b doing    | c will    |
| 2. a 'm     | b 's       | c 'll     |
| 3. a going  | b is       | c will    |
| 4. a is     | b are      | c will    |
| 5. a am     | b will     | c won't   |
| 6. a 'm     | b 're      | c 'll     |
| 7. a has    | b have     | c to have |
| 8. a are    | b will     | c is      |
| 9. a aren't | b will     | c won't   |
| 10. a Will  | b Going to | c Are     |



### Exam facts

- In this part, you listen to one person speaking.
- There are some notes with five spaces for you to complete.
- You have to write a word, a number, a date or a time in each space.

**Health, medicine and exercise**

**1** Read the descriptions and complete the words. The first letter is given to you. There is one space for each letter in the word.

1. If you have a problem with this, you go to the dentist. t \_\_\_\_\_
2. You use these to see. e \_\_\_\_\_
3. This might be curly or straight. h \_\_\_\_\_
4. You wear shoes on these. f \_\_\_\_\_
5. Some animals have got a big one of these, for example humans and dolphins. b \_\_\_\_\_
6. This is between your head and your body. n \_\_\_\_\_
7. You have ten of these on your hands. f \_\_\_\_\_
8. This moves your blood around your body. h \_\_\_\_\_
9. If you eat a lot of cake, you might have a pain here. s \_\_\_\_\_
10. Some people write with their left one of these. h \_\_\_\_\_

**Exam task**

2



Track 7

For each question, write the correct answer in the gap.  
Write one word or a number or a date or a time.  
You will hear a woman talking about a medical centre.

**Medical centre**

Address: Park Street

Centre is next to: the (1) .....

Doctor's name: Dr (2) .....

Doctor speaks: English and (3) .....

Closes every Tuesday at: (4) ..... p.m.

Hospital phone number: (5) .....

3

Read the conversations. Choose the correct modal verb.

1. I've got toothache. You *might* / *should* go to the dentist!
  
2. Chris has fallen off his motorbike and now his arm hurts. It *might* / *should* be broken so he *might not* / *shouldn't* move.
  
3. Emma fell over when she was running and has hurt her ankle. I think she *might* / *should* put a bandage on it.
  
4. I've got a headache. You *might* / *should* lie down in your bedroom and take this medicine.
  
5. Can you help me? I've cut my hand on a rock. There is a lot of blood so you *might* / *should* see a doctor.
  
6. Lucy is very hot. She *might not* / *shouldn't* go to school today because she *might* / *should* have a temperature.
  
7. I'm really tired and I don't feel well. You *might* / *should* go to bed. You will feel better tomorrow.
  
8. Mum, I feel sick. My stomach hurts. You *might not* / *shouldn't* eat any more sweets, Jeremy. And take some medicine.

 **Exam tips**

- Before you listen, read the form carefully.
- Think about what kind of information you need to write for each question – for example, a day, time, name, phone number, etc.
- If the word is the name of person or a place, the speaker will spell it. The other words will be vocabulary we use in everyday life.

**Dates and services****1a****Match the numbers to the words.**

1st	fifth
2nd	first
3rd	fourteenth
4th	fourth
5th	ninth
9th	second
12th	third
13th	thirteenth
14th	thirty-first
20th	twelfth
25th	twentieth
31st	twenty-fifth

**1b****Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1a.**

- The Listening paper is the ..... part of the exam.
- March is the ..... month of the year.
- E is the ..... letter of the alphabet.
- December is the ..... month of the year.
- Halloween is on the ..... of October.
- M is the ..... letter of the alphabet.
- Christmas Day is on the ..... of December.
- September is the ..... month of the year.
- Valentine's Day is on the ..... of February.
- April is the ..... month of the year.
- T is the ..... letter of the alphabet.
- New Year's Day is on the ..... of January.

**Get it right!****Look at the sentences below and choose the correct one.**

It is very important to me because I will go to New Zealand tomorrow.

It is very important to me because I am going to New Zealand tomorrow.



## Exam task

2



Track 8

For each question, write the correct answer in the gap.

Write one word or a number or a date or a time.  
You will hear a teacher talking about photography lessons.

### Photography course

Start: 3rd October

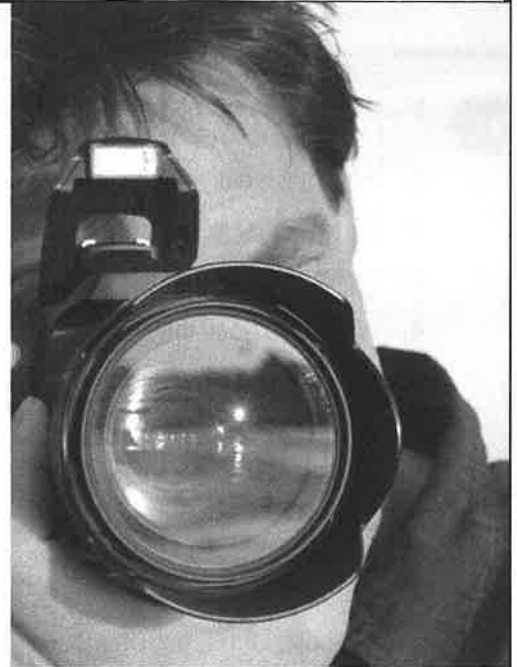
Day of course during October: **(1)** .....

Cost: **(2)** £ .....

Month when college is closed: **(3)** .....

College office closes in the evening at: **(4)** .....

Address: **(5)** 59 ..... Street



3

Choose the correct response to each question, a, b or c.

- What time does the museum close at the weekend?  
a It opens on Saturdays.    b At half past seven.    c Yes, every week.
- When is your birthday?  
a It's at five o'clock.    b It's in 1995.    c It's on the 3rd of May.
- When is your favourite programme on TV?  
a On the 6th December.    b On Wednesday evenings.    c I saw it last September.
- Do you have swimming lessons on Tuesdays?  
a No, last week.    b On Mondays.    c Yes, from seven to eight in the evening.
- When are you going on holiday?  
a On the 13th of October.    b Yesterday, with my parents.    c On Tuesdays from 7 p.m. to 9 p.m.
- What time do you get up?  
a In the morning.    b At a quarter past seven on weekdays.    c It's nine o'clock in the morning.
- When will the new video game be on sale?  
a I play it every week.    b Last week. It was great.    c In the spring, I think.
- Is the sports centre open on Sundays?  
a Yes, it opens at 9 a.m.    b It's open every day from Monday to Saturday.    c No, it closes at 5 p.m.

**Leisure time**

1 Match the questions (1–6) to the answers (a–f). Then underline the answer word(s).

1. How much did you pay for that video game, Chris? .....
  2. Was it sunny in France last week, Jane? .....
  3. When do you have dance lessons, Alex? .....
  4. What time does the picnic start on Sunday? .....
  5. When are you going to the *One Star* concert in London? .....
  6. Where did Bella learn English? .....
- a They are playing for three nights, but my ticket's for the 25th of September.
  - b The full price is £15, but my brother works in the computer shop and he gets a discount, so I only paid £12!
  - c At about 12.00, but I'm meeting Felix at the station at 11:30 and we're going together.
  - d No, it wasn't. It was cloudy, but it didn't rain!
  - e Every Friday. Do you want to come next week?
  - f She lived in London for two years when she was twenty.

**Exam task**

Track 9

2

For each question, choose the correct answer. You will hear Jack talking to his friend Martin about music.



- 1 What is the name of Martin's music teacher?
  - A Harry
  - B Peter
  - C Steve
- 2 Martin has music lessons on
  - A Tuesdays.
  - B Thursdays.
  - C Saturdays.
- 3 How long does Martin practise at the weekend?
  - A 1 hour
  - B 2 hours
  - C 3 hours
- 4 Martin likes the music festival because
  - A tickets are free.
  - B the bands are local.
  - C there are lots of people there.
- 5 Jack will arrive at the music festival
  - A at 6:15.
  - B at 7:00.
  - C at 7:45.

3a

Complete the table with the words in the box.

the beach	a bike	a camera	the cinema	cooking
a fishing rod	go to a festival	go to a restaurant	have a barbecue	
have a picnic	a mobile phone	a museum	painting	
	the park	reading	taking photos	

Favourite things	Hobbies	Places to go	Things to do at the weekend
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....

3b

Answer the questions about yourself.

1. What do you do in your free time?

.....

2. Can you play an instrument?

.....

3. What is your favourite thing?

.....

4. Where do you usually meet your friends?

.....

5. How often do you go the cinema?

.....

6. What did you do yesterday afternoon?

.....

7. What are you going to do at the weekend?

.....

8. Have you ever been to a music festival?

.....

 **Exam facts**

- In this part, you listen to a conversation between two people.
- There are five questions and you have to choose the right answer (A, B or C).
- The answers come from both speakers. One of the speakers can give three or four of the answers.



**Social media and technology****1** Put the letters in the right order to make words. Then complete the sentences.

- I usually ..... games onto my laptop computer to practise my English. (dwondaol)
- I use my ..... to call my friends, take photos and send messages. (emboil npohe)
- You can find out about lots of things on the ..... . (ietrentrn)
- I often play ..... in my spare time. (voied gsmæ)
- My favourite band have got an amazing ..... with interesting facts and information on it. (wbe pega)
- My sister loves taking photos with her ..... . (dtlilga cmraea)
- Some people spend many hours chatting to friends ..... . (oinnel)
- Q is the first letter on most ..... . (ekybardos)
- You can use a ..... to open and close documents on your computer. (mesuo)
- I send lots of ..... every day at work. (ealims)

**Exam task**

Track 10

**2**

For each question, choose the correct answer.  
You will hear Lisa talking to her friend Robert about computers.



- Where did Lisa buy her laptop?
  - Bridge Street
  - Green Street
  - High Street
- The most useful website Robert has seen is
  - buy-a-computer.com
  - parks-computers.com
  - new-laptop.com
- Lisa's new laptop weighs
  - one kilogramme.
  - 1.5 kilogrammes.
  - two kilogrammes.
- How much did Lisa pay for her laptop?
  - £579
  - £699
  - £849
- Why will Robert buy a new laptop?
  - to talk to his brother
  - to shop online
  - to study

3

Rewrite the sentences in the past or present passive.



1. Martin Cooper invented the first mobile phone in 1973.

.....

2. Lots of people watch videos on the internet.

.....

3. My brother didn't write that email.

.....

4. People often read news articles online.

.....

5. Tim Berners-Lee created the first website in 1991.

.....

6. Young people usually play video games at home.

.....

7. The teacher showed the students some useful websites.

.....

 **Exam tips**

- You have to answer a question or complete a sentence.
- You will hear information about all three answers, but only one is right.
- Look at the questions to see who will give the answer.

**Travel and holidays**

1

Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are some words that you do not need to use.

article	bill	comics	diary	diploma
form	magazines	menu	newspaper	passport
postcard	project	textbook	ticket	

- My little brother loves reading .....
- We haven't finished all the exercises in our English ..... yet.
- Great! The ..... in this restaurant is in English!
- Lots of people read fashion .....
- I usually read the ..... on the train in the morning.
- My sister writes in her ..... every day.
- Sandra, you need to get a new ..... to travel to New Zealand.
- I always send my parents a ..... when I'm on holiday.
- You must keep your ..... for the return journey.
- I read an interesting ..... about sport on the internet.

**Exam task**

2

Track 11

For each question, choose the correct answer.

You will hear James talking to his friend Susan about his holiday.

- How long is James's holiday?
  - one week
  - two weeks
  - three weeks
- Where is James flying to first?
  - Manchester
  - Miami
  - Paris
- Where did Susan go in January?
  - Canada
  - Mexico
  - the USA
- How does James feel about the flight to Miami?
  - It will be too long.
  - He will feel tired after it.
  - He will use the time to sleep.
- Where at the airport will Susan meet James?
  - in the car park
  - in the arrivals hall
  - in the bus station



3a

Match 1–10 with a–j.

1. I'm

2. Emily and Vicky

3. We're going

4. I'm not going to stay

5. Tom

6. My grandmother's

7. I

8. My brother isn't driving

9. We're having

10. My parents love sightseeing so

a 'm flying to Mallorca tomorrow.

b they're going to visit the Old Town tomorrow.

c are travelling around the USA this summer.

d coming to visit us in July.

e to go swimming tomorrow.

f going to take a photo of the beach now.

g 's going to take us to the lake after lunch.

h lunch at half past one.

i on a campsite this year.

j to France in August – he's flying.

3b

Write a few sentences about your next holiday.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**Get it right!**

Look at the sentence below. Then try to correct the mistake.

This present gave to me by my old German friend.

**House and home**

1

Read the sentences. Choose the correct word for each space, a, b or c.

1. Can you tell me your ....., please?  
a address      b apartment      c house
2. Many British houses have got .... on the floor.  
a carpet      b curtains      c downstairs
3. I haven't got a ....., so I have to park my car on the street.  
a gate      b garage      c roof
4. Some people sing when they are in the .....
5. It was cold last night, so I got an extra .... from the cupboard.  
a blanket      b pillow      c lamp
6. Oh no! I've lost my house .....
7. My brother lives in a flat on the third .... of a building.  
a door      b floor      c room
8. I need to go shopping because there isn't any milk in the .....
9. There's a comfortable .... in my living room.  
a armchair      b bed      c television
10. Can you put a clean .... in the bathroom, please?  
a clock      b desk      c towel

**Exam task**

2

Track 12

For each question, choose the correct answer.

- 1 You will hear two friends talking about the man's new apartment. What did he buy for his new apartment?  
A bookshelves  
B an armchair  
C curtains
- 2 You will hear a boy leaving a message for his mother. Where is the cake?  
A on the table  
B in the fridge  
C on the cooker

3 You will hear a woman talking to her daughter Jodie. Where is Jodie's grandfather now?

- A in the garden
- B in the living room
- C in the garage

4 You will hear a woman talking about her office at home. What will the woman move?

- A a lamp
- B a desk
- C a cupboard

5 You will hear a man and a woman talking at home. What is broken?

- A a clock
- B a radio
- C a television

3

Put the words into the correct order to make questions. Then write answers about where you live.

1. Do / live / you / house / a / or / in / flat / a / ?

2. it / How / got / bedrooms / many / has / ?

3. What / door / is / your / colour / front / ?

4. you / a / Have / garden / got / ?

5. TV / you / usually / do / Where / watch / ?

6. you / in / got / bedroom / an / Have / armchair / your / ?

7. Is / in / there / a / living / your / room / clock / ?

8. you / Do / city / in / live / a / ?



### Exam facts

- In this part, you listen to one or two people talking.
- There are five questions and you have to choose the right answer (A, B or C).
- You have to answer a question or complete a sentence.



### Entertainment and the media

1a

Write the correct adjective in each gap.

- The TV programme wasn't interesting – we all thought it was b \_ \_ \_ \_ g
- The new comedy play is so f \_ \_ \_ y – I laughed all the way through.
- The action film was so n \_ \_ \_ y – I couldn't hear what the actors were saying.
- There was a story on the news that was really s \_ \_ \_ \_ e – I didn't understand it at all.
- I love adventure films because they are so e \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ g, but my brother thinks they are scary.



1b

Read the sentences and put the correct job in each gap.

tour guide      journalist      photographer      actor      musician

- I write articles for newspapers and magazines. I'm a .....
- I play the guitar in a band. I'm a .....
- I show visitors around my city. I'm a .....
- I'm famous because I've acted in many movies. I'm an .....
- I take pictures for news websites. I'm a .....



### Exam tips

- You will hear information about all three answers, but only one is correct.
- You have to listen for the main idea or the topic or opinions. Make sure you listen to the whole piece before choosing your answer.
- The speaker(s) may use some words that are not from the Key wordlist, but you will not need to understand these to answer the question.

 **Exam task**

**2**

 **Track 13**

**For each question, choose the correct answer.**

- 1 You will hear two friends talking about going to the theatre. How will the woman travel to the theatre?  
**A** by car  
**B** on foot  
**C** in a taxi
- 2 You will hear a boy talking about a book he has just read. What did he think about the book?  
**A** It was funny.  
**B** It was strange.  
**C** It was exciting.
- 3 You will hear two friends agreeing where to meet before a concert. Where will they meet?  
**A** at the café  
**B** at the ticket office  
**C** at the entrance
- 4 You will hear a woman describing her job. What is her job?  
**A** tour guide  
**B** coach driver  
**C** hotel receptionist
- 5 You will hear a teacher talking to her class. What does she want the class to do?  
**A** read something  
**B** draw something  
**C** write something

**3**

**Underline the imperatives in the sentences. One of the sentences does not have an imperative. Then match the sentences (1–10) to the people (a–j).**

1. Call us now to make an appointment.	a a football club
2. Phone Peter on 553442 about the next match.	b a hairdresser
3. Look on our webpage for details about the cruise.	c a parent
4. Shhh. Don't talk!	d a hotel receptionist
5. OK, everyone, show me your homework, please.	e a teacher
6. Send me a postcard when you're on holiday!	f a travel agent's
7. Please fill in this form before we give you your key.	g a tourist information office
8. Thank you. That is the end of the test.	h a Cambridge English Speaking examiner
9. Paul, go to bed now!	i a student in a library
10. Meet the tour guide outside the museum at 9 a.m.	j your friend



**Education and study**

1

Complete the swimming pool rules with the words in the box.

don't	have (x2)	must (x2)	mustn't	not	to
-------	-----------	-----------	---------	-----	----

- You ..... follow these rules.
- You ..... run.
- You ..... have a shower before you get into the pools.
- You must ..... eat or drink in the pools.
- If you can't swim, you ..... to stay in the small pool.
- If you have short hair, you ..... have to wear a swimming hat.
- Children under five years old don't ..... to pay.
- Children under eight years old have ..... be with an adult.

**Exam task**

2



Track 14

For each question, choose the correct answer.

- You will hear a girl telling her uncle about school. What is her favourite subject?
  - history
  - art
  - science
- You will hear a teacher talking to students. What is different about today's science club?
  - the time
  - the room
  - the teacher
- You will hear Jim telling his friend why he can't play hockey. What has Jim hurt?
  - his hand
  - his leg
  - his foot
- You will hear two friends talking at school. What has the girl forgotten to bring to school?
  - her bag
  - her purse
  - her pencil case
- You will hear a teacher talking to her class about a visit yesterday. Where did they visit?
  - an art gallery
  - an animal park
  - a science museum

3a

Put the words into the correct order to make sentences.

1. You / lots / vegetables / to / of / and / eat / fruit / have / .

.....

2. mustn't / in / run / corridors / You / the / !

.....

3. for / You / to / take / need / this / ten / medicine / days / .

.....

4. have / You / me / don't / to / help / .

.....

5. your / turn / You / mobile / an / phone / in / exam / off / must / .

.....

6. shout / needn't / I / You / hear / can / you / !

.....

3b

Read the sentences and choose the correct alternative for each one.

1. Tom *has* / *must* to wear a suit to work every day.
2. We *don't have to* / *mustn't* touch the animals – they're dangerous!
3. Alice *must* / *need* speak English in the classroom!
4. Dad, you *have to* / *needn't* take me to the cinema – I can get the bus.
5. Jackie *doesn't have* / *mustn't* to go to school on Saturday mornings.
6. You *don't have* / *need* to call your sister this evening – she's worried about you!



**Get it right!**

Look at the sentences below and choose the correct one.

You must to bring a book and a pencil case.

You have to bring a book and a pencil case.

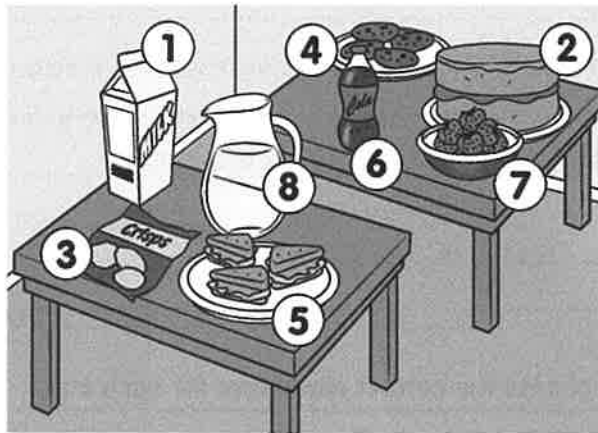


**Food and drink**

1

Look at the picture and complete questions (1–4) with the words in the box. Then write questions (5–8).

that      these      this      those



- |                                      |                                |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. What's .....? It's milk.          | 5. ....? They're sandwiches.   |
| 2. What's .....? It's a cake.        | 6. ....? It's cola.            |
| 3. What are .....? They're crisps.   | 7. ....? They're strawberries. |
| 4. What are .....? They're biscuits. | 8. ....? It's water.           |



**Exam task**

2

Track 15

For each question, choose the correct answer. You will hear Sarah talking to Mike about a picnic. What will each person bring to the picnic?



**Example**

0 Sarah  G

**People**

- 1 Mike
- 2 Margaret
- 3 John
- 4 Andrea
- 5 Eric

**Food and drink**

- A apples
- B biscuits
- C cakes
- D cola
- E hamburgers
- F ice cream
- G sandwiches
- H strawberries

**3a**Write **C** (countable) or **UC** (uncountable) next to each word.

1. biscuit __	5. egg __	9. milk __	13. sandwich __
2. bread __	6. grape __	10. orange __	14. sausage __
3. crisp __	7. hamburger __	11. pasta __	15. sugar __
4. cheese __	8. meat __	12. salad __	16. water __

**3b**

Choose the correct alternative in each sentence.

- There isn't much *hamburgers* / *cheese* in the fridge.
- There aren't many *oranges* / *milk* in the supermarket.
- There are a lot of *biscuits* / *sugar* in our shopping basket.
- There is a lot of *sausages* / *pasta* on my plate!
- There are a few *apples* / *sugar* in the cupboard.
- There is a little *eggs* / *bread* on the table.
- There *is* / *are* a lot of salad in this sandwich!
- There isn't *many* / *much* water in the bottle.
- There are a *few* / *little* grapes in the bowl.
- Are* / *Is* there any crisps in the bag?
- There aren't *many* / *much* sandwiches in the shop.
- There is a *few* / *little* meat in the freezer.

 **Exam facts**

- In this part, you listen to a conversation between two people who know each other.
- There are five questions, plus an example at the beginning.
- You have to match two lists of information – for example, people to jobs, rooms to furniture, presents to people, books/films to opinions.



**Hobbies and shopping**

1

Look at the table and read the sentences. Are they TRUE or FALSE?

	Surfing	Playing computer games	Going shopping	Dancing
Agatha	✓✓	X	✓	X
Hugh	✓✓✓	✓	X	✓
Vanessa	✓	✓✓	X	✓✓✓

1. Agatha likes playing computer games. ....
2. Hugh thinks surfing is more interesting than dancing. ....
3. Vanessa prefers surfing to dancing. ....
4. Agatha enjoys surfing and dancing. ....
5. Hugh's favourite hobby is playing computer games. ....
6. Vanessa is not interested in going shopping. ....
7. Agatha doesn't like playing computer games or dancing. ....
8. Hugh thinks playing computer games is boring. ....
9. Agatha prefers going shopping to dancing. ....
10. Hugh and Vanessa don't enjoy going shopping. ....

**Exam task**

2

Track 16

For each question, choose the correct answer.  
You will hear Sonia talking to Dan about shopping.  
What did Sonia buy in each shop?

**Example**

0 chemist's  D

**Shops**

- 1 clothes shop
- 2 bookshop
- 3 supermarket
- 4 sports shop
- 5 market

**Things**

- A bag
- B cake
- C flowers
- D shampoo
- E socks
- F towel
- G trainers
- H trousers







**Countries and sports**

1

Complete the table with the correct words.

Country	Nationality	Language
(1) .....	Australian	English
Brazil	(2) .....	Portuguese
The United Kingdom	British	(3) .....
(4) .....	Chinese	Chinese
France	(5) .....	French
(6) .....	Mexican	Spanish
Italy	Italian	(7) .....
Turkey	(8) .....	Turkish



**Exam task**

2

Track 17

For each question, choose the correct answer. You will hear Tanya talking to a friend about a sports camp. Which sport did each person try?



**Example**

0 Tanya  B

**People**

1 Chris

2 Gina

3 Tom

4 Emma

5 Harry

**Sports**

A basketball

B climbing

C golf

D horse riding

E sailing

F swimming

G tennis

H windsurfing

Put the words in the correct order to make suggestions. Use the responses to help you.

1. don't / Why / we / on / shopping / go / Thursday / ?

.....  
No, I don't like shopping!

2. go / you / like / to / at / skiing / the / Would / weekend / ?

.....  
I'd love to, but I have to work.

3. beach / running / morning / on / the / Let's / tomorrow / go / .

.....  
Good idea!

4. want / to / Do / play / you / tennis / after / school / ?

.....  
No, sorry. I can't.

5. a / we / movie / Shall / watch / later / ?

.....  
OK. We can see the new Tom Cruise film.

6. walk / going / What / for / a / park / in / afternoon / about / the / this / ?

.....  
No, that's boring, but we could go skateboarding instead!



### *Get it right!*

Look at the sentences below. Then try to correct the mistake in each one.

I like listening to musics and watching films.

Did you get much presents?



**Personal identification**

**1**

**Complete the conversation with the correct phrases.**

**Ben:** Hello. My name's Ben. I've just moved to Newville.

**Oliver: (1)** .....

**Ben:** Hi, Oliver. Do you live in Newville?

**Oliver: (2)** .....

**Ben:** Oh, really! How often do you play sport there?

**Oliver: (3)** .....

**Ben:** What do you do at the weekend?

**Oliver: (4)** .....

**Ben:** Is the shopping centre in Newville good?

**Oliver: (5)** .....

**Ben:** And what's your favourite place in Newville?

**Oliver: (6)** .....

- a Football and tennis but I'm not very good.
- b I'm fine, thanks. And you?
- c I usually meet my friends, and we go skateboarding.
- d Not very often. I prefer watching football on TV.
- e Pleased to meet you. I'm Oliver.
- f This park because it's very beautiful.
- g I don't really know. I do my shopping online.
- h Yes, near the sports centre.



**Exam task**

**2**

**Put the words in the correct order to make questions or sentences. Ask and answer with a partner.**

- 1 your / What's / name / ?
- 2 old / How / you / are / ?
- 3 work / Do / are / student / you / a / or / you / ?
- 4 you / are / Where / from / ?
- 5 English / your / Who / teacher / is / ?
- 6 learning / start / English / When / you / did / ?
- 7 many / lessons / you / do / How / English / week / have / every / ?
- 8 much / How / do / get / you / homework / English / ?
- 9 something / lesson / Please / about / English / an / tell / you / me / enjoyed / .
- 10 kinds / like / do / What / you / of / watching / programmes / TV / ?
- 11 TV / do / Where / watch / you / ?
- 12 you / often / do / How / TV / watch / ?
- 13 watching / Who / you / like / with / TV / do / ?
- 14 something / programme / Please / favourite / tell / your / me / TV / about / .

Complete the sentences with the correct word. The first letter of each word is given to help you.



1. Bob is your first name and Brown is your s \_\_\_\_\_.
2. You are a man. You are married. You have a w \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Eric has got a sister but he hasn't got any b \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Your mum has got a sister. She's your a \_\_\_\_\_.
5. My father's father is my g \_\_\_\_\_.
6. You've got a child. She's a girl. She's your d \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I am 15 years old and my brother is 17. We're both t \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Your uncle's got two children. They're your c \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The people who live near you are your n \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Your mum and dad are your p \_\_\_\_\_.



### **Exam facts**

- In this part, the examiner asks you questions about yourself.
- The questions are about your name, where you come from, and other things, such as your hobbies, family and studies.
- You only speak to the examiner. You don't speak to the other student.

To watch videos of the complete A2 Key and A2 Key for Schools Speaking tests, go to:  
<https://keyandpreliminary.cambridgeenglish.org/resources.htm>

**Daily life**

**1**

Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

afternoon	evening	meeting
morning	o'clock	past
tomorrow	Tuesday	quarter
		week



**Matt:** Hi Maria. I haven't seen you for ages! Are you going to Peter's party this **(1)** ..... ? I think it starts at eight **(2)** .....

**Maria:** No, I have to study tonight because I've got an important maths exam **(3)** .....

**Matt:** Oh, OK. Good luck!

**Maria:** Thanks. My exams finish next week, so do you want to play tennis on **(4)** .....

**Matt:** I can't. I'm **(5)** ..... Martin to talk about our summer holiday.

**Maria:** What time are you meeting him?

**Matt:** At a **(6)** ..... to ten. He starts work at midday.

**Maria:** Why don't we play tennis in the **(7)** ..... ? We could meet outside the sports centre at half **(8)** ..... four.

**Matt:** Great! But can you lend me a racket? Mine is broken.

**Maria:** No problem! See you next **(9)** ..... and have fun at the party! Do you want me to phone you in the **(10)** ..... , after my exam?

**Matt:** No! I'll be sleeping!

**Exam task**

**2**

Use the words to make complete questions or sentences. Ask and answer with a partner.

**Personal information**

- 1 What | name?
- 2 Do | work | student?
- 3 How old ?
- 4 Where | live?

**Daily life**

- 5 time | you | get up?
- 6 Where | usually | lunch?
- 7 When | go | bed?
- 8 Who | you | eat dinner ?
- 9 tell | something about | did yesterday.

**Sport**

- 10 Which sports | enjoy playing?
- 11 Where | you | play sport | your town?
- 12 Which sports | enjoy watching?
- 13 Who | you | sport with?
- 14 tell | something | sport | would like | learn.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. early / never / get up / I / at / the weekend / .

.....

2. reads / brother / My / comics / always / .

.....

3. often / on / pizza / We / Saturdays / eat / .

.....

4. is / sunny / in / It / the summer / usually / .

.....

5. English / always / classes / I / on Mondays / have / .

.....

6. I / tired / the evening / in / sometimes / am / .

.....

7. at / I / the house / usually / leave / half past eight / .

.....

8. rides / dad / a motorbike / My / sometimes / to work / .

.....

9. the / never / do / cooking / I / at home / .

.....

10. in / I / often / my friends / meet / the evening / .

.....



### Exam tips

- Answer with more than one word. For example, if the examiner asks you 'Where do you live?', don't just say 'Italy'. Say 'I live in Italy' or 'I live in a small village in Italy, not far from Rome'.
- For the last question, the examiner will ask you to speak about one thing. For example, he or she will say, 'Now please tell me something about your favourite hobby'.
- Try to say three things when you answer the *Please tell me about ...* question.

To watch videos of the complete A2 Key and A2 Key for Schools Speaking tests, go to:  
<https://keyandpreliminary.cambridgeenglish.org/resources.htm>

## Places and buildings

1

Choose the correct word to complete the conversation, a, b or c.

1. Have you bought your ticket to York yet?

No, but my dad is driving me to the ..... to get it this afternoon.

a cinema                      b museum                      c bus station

2. What do you do at the weekends?

I love dancing, so I always go to the ..... on Fridays.

a supermarket                      b disco                      c theatre

3. Where do you usually meet your friends?

We often spend the whole day in the ..... , but we never buy anything!

a library                      b shopping centre                      c park

4. Have you finished writing your postcards yet?

Yes, and now I need to buy some stamps. Where's the ..... ?

a department store                      b museum                      c post office

5. What are you doing tomorrow afternoon?

I'm having a surfing lesson at 3 p.m. with my friend at the .....

a beach                      b sports centre                      c swimming pool

6. How often do you go to the ..... ?

I do my food shopping there every Friday.

a supermarket                      b café                      c hotel

7. What's your favourite film?

I don't like films. I prefer watching plays at the .....

a theatre                      b school                      c gallery

8. Where do you do sport?

I usually go running in the ..... every afternoon.

a swimming pool                      b park                      c shopping centre

9. Do you like reading books?

Yes, I do. I borrow books from the ..... every month.

a bookshop                      b library                      c bank

10. Please tell me something about your best friend.

Her name's Rosie and she's a nurse. She works in a .....

a school                      b pharmacy                      c hospital





## Exam task

2

Complete the questions and sentences. Ask and answer with a partner.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 What's ..... name?                            | 9 Please tell me something ..... your favourite place in your town. |
| 2 ..... old are you?                            | 10 ..... many bedrooms are there in your home?                      |
| 3 ..... you work or ..... you a student?        | 11 Who ..... you live with?   |
| 4 Where ..... you live?                         | 12 Where in your town ..... your house?                             |
| 5 ..... do you go in your town at the weekends? | 13 ..... do you like most about your home?                          |
| 6 Is ..... a swimming pool near your house?     | 14 Please ..... me something about your living room.                |
| 7 How ..... parks are there in your town?       |   |
| 8 Where do you ..... shopping?                  |   |

3

Match the questions (1–8) with the answers (a–h).

1. Do you like going to the theatre? ....
  2. How often do you go to the cinema? ....
  3. When do you usually do sport? ....
  4. What do you usually do with your friends? ....
  5. Where did you go yesterday afternoon? ....
  6. How often do you go to the library? ....
  7. When do you go shopping? ....
  8. How often do you watch sport on TV? ....
- a Every day! I swim one kilometre every morning.
  - b Every Saturday! I usually go with my sister and she always buys some new clothes.
  - c I sometimes go there to study, but I never borrow books.
  - d I went to the art gallery. There were a lot of tourists, but I loved the paintings. Dali's were my favourite.
  - e Never! I always go to the stadium to watch my favourite team.
  - f Never, because it's very expensive. I like watching films on my computer.
  - g We love cooking, so we usually go to the supermarket to get the food and then we make dinner together.
  - h Yes, I do. I love watching plays.



## Get it right!

Look at the sentence below. Then try to correct the mistake.

What time you can come?

To watch videos of the complete A2 Key and A2 Key for Schools Speaking tests, go to:  
<https://keyandpreliminary.cambridgeenglish.org/resources.htm>

**Hobbies and leisure**

**1**

Match the questions (1–8) with the answers (a–h).

1. What time do you leave the house in the morning?

2. Do you wear a uniform for work?

3. When do you watch TV?

4. What did you have for breakfast this morning?

5. Do you listen to the radio?

6. Where do you usually have dinner?

7. How often do you send emails?

8. Who do you play sport with?

a At home, with my family.

b Every day, because I work in an office.

c Some toast and a glass of orange juice.

d Usually around half past eight.

e In the evening, after dinner.

f No, I don't. I prefer listening to my MP3 player.

g My friends – we usually go to the gym or the swimming pool.

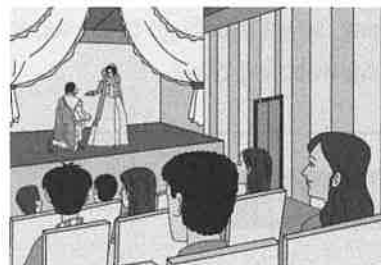
h Yes, I do, because I'm a waitress.

**Exam task**

**2**

**Phase 1 Discuss this topic with a partner for 1–2 minutes.**

Here are some pictures that show different free time activities. Do you like these different free time activities? Say why or why not.



**Ask and answer these questions about the pictures.**

Do you think ...

- ... reading is a good way to spend free time?
- ... going for a picnic with friends is fun?
- ... baking is a useful free time activity?

Which of these free time activities do you like best? Why?

**Phase 2**

**Ask and answer these questions with a partner.**

- When you have free time, do you prefer going out or staying at home? (Why?)
- What new activity would you like to start doing during your free time? (Why?)

3

**Put the letters in the correct order to make words for months and seasons.**

- |                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Aguuts .....   | 6. yJlu .....      |
| 2. tmuanu .....   | 7. bSempetre ..... |
| 3. Dmebeecr ..... | 8. sipgrn .....    |
| 4. Fbreruya ..... | 9. smuemr .....    |
| 5. Jyaanru .....  | 10. rweitn .....   |



**Exam facts**

**Part 2 Phase 1**

- In this part, you talk to the other student for 1–2 minutes. You have to look at some pictures and discuss why you like or don't like the different things in the pictures.
- After 1–2 minutes, the examiner will ask you one or more questions about the pictures, including, 'Which ... do you like best?'

**Part 2 Phase 2**

- The examiner will ask you two more questions about the same topic as in Part 2 Phase 1.



**Sport**

**1**

Complete the sentences with the correct word from the box.

cycle   go   hit   kick   practise   ride   swim   throw   watch   win

1. When you play basketball, you catch the ball and ..... it to the other players.
2. Next year, I'm going to learn to ..... a horse.
3. You have to ..... the ball with a bat when you play cricket.
4. If you want to be good at sport, you have to ..... every day.
5. You must be able to ..... if you want to learn to surf.
6. Many people prefer to ..... sport on TV at the weekend.
7. I want to ..... around the city on my new bike tomorrow.
8. You mustn't ..... the ball when you play volleyball.
9. I love playing tennis, but I never ..... my matches.
10. In the summer, I usually ..... running on the beach.

**Exam tips**

**Part 2 Phase 1**

- In this part, talk about all five pictures. Say why you like or don't like each picture.
- Ask the other student what he or she thinks.
- It's not necessary to agree with the other student.

**Part 2 Phase 2**

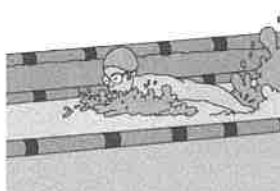
- There are no right or wrong answers to the questions. Just give your opinions and remember to say why you think that.

**Exam task**

**2**

**Phase 1 Discuss this topic with a partner for 1–2 minutes.**

Here are some pictures that show different water sports. Do you like these different water sports? Say why or why not.



**Ask and answer these questions about the pictures.**

Do you think ...

... diving is exciting?

... swimming is healthy?

... sailing is easy?

Which of these water sports do you like best? Why?

**Phase 2**

**Ask and answer these questions with a partner.**

Do you prefer watching sport or doing sport? (Why?)

Did you enjoy sport more when you were younger? (Why? / Why not?)

**3**

**Read a conversation between two students. They are discussing five different sports.**

**Use sentences a–e to complete the conversation.**

- a Not really. You have to walk too far. What about you?
  - b And then you could hurt yourself. But it looks exciting, doesn't it?
  - c I agree. In my opinion, tennis is easier to learn than golf.
  - d You're right, especially if you want to become really good at both those sports.
  - e Yes, really hard. And also I'm a bit scared of horses. What about skiing?
1. I think learning to ride a horse is very difficult. What do you think?  
.....
  2. I've never tried skiing, but I think it could be dangerous. You might fall over.  
.....
  3. Yes, you're right. Would you like to learn to play golf?  
.....
  4. I think golf's a bit boring. And it's hard to hit the ball very far when you're a beginner.  
.....
  5. I'm not sure about that. They're both hard to learn.  
.....

**Travel and holidays**

**1a**

Put the words in the correct place in the table.

boat	bridge	bus stop	car	catch	drive
driver	helicopter	passenger	roundabout	taxi	
tourist	traffic light	travel	visit	visitor	

A thing	A person	A way to travel	A verb
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....

**1b**

Complete the sentences with a word from Exercise 1a. You do not need to use all the words.

1. Lots of visitors to London take a ..... trip on the River Thames.
2. I took a ..... ride over the Grand Canyon last year – it was fantastic.
3. Often, it is faster to ..... by train than by bus.
4. I usually go to work on the bus because there's a ..... at the end of my street.
5. You have to stop when a ..... is red.
6. In the UK, you can learn to ..... when you are 17 years old.

**Exam task**

**2**

Phase 1 Discuss this topic with a partner for 1–2 minutes.

Here are some pictures that show different holidays. Do you like these different holidays? Say why or why not.



**Ask and answer these questions about the pictures.**

Do you think ...

- ... holidays in the city are expensive?
- ... camping holidays are fun?
- ... visiting old places on holiday is interesting?

Which of these holidays do you like best? Why?

**Phase 2**

**Ask and answer these questions with a partner.**

- Do you prefer to go on holiday with friends or family? (Why?)
- Would you like to go on holiday during the winter? (Why? / Why not?)

**3**

**Complete the text with the correct words, a, b or c.**

My name's Joshua and I love travelling. I've been to lots of places and I've **(1)** ..... some amazing people. Actually, last year, I even **(2)** ..... a famous actor on the beach in Mexico! This year I've already **(3)** ..... three countries. In January, I saw my sister in Spain, in March, I **(4)** ..... to Italy and I've just **(5)** ..... home from a holiday with my friends. It was fun but my bag **(6)** ..... in the supermarket near our hotel! This summer I **(7)** ..... to California with my cousin. We **(8)** ..... a motorbike along Highway One and explore San Francisco. I think we **(9)** ..... an amazing time!

- |                        |              |              |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. a have met          | b meet       | c met        |
| 2. a seen              | b saw        | c see        |
| 3. a visit             | b visited    | c visiting   |
| 4. a go                | b gone       | c went       |
| 5. a return            | b returned   | c returning  |
| 6. a stole             | b has stolen | c was stolen |
| 7. a am going          | b go         | c will go    |
| 8. a are going to ride | b ride       | c 'll ride   |
| 9. a had               | b have       | c 'll have   |



**Get it right!**

**Look at the sentences below and choose the correct one.**

- Write me a letter to tell me what you are going to do.
- Write me a letter to tell me what you are going to do.



## Think about it

### A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 1

Read about A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 1. Are the sentences TRUE or FALSE?

1. In this part of the exam, I have to match short texts with the correct meaning. ....
2. I need to understand the main message of each short text .....
3. There are eight short texts in total. ....
4. For each short text, there are two sentences. ....
5. The short texts can be notices, signs, labels, text messages, emails or notes. ....
6. All of the words in the question will be from the Key wordlist. ....
7. For each question, I only need to mark the correct letter on my answer sheet. ....
8. There is an example at the beginning of A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 1. ....



## Think about it

### A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 2

Complete the sentences about A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 2 with the correct alternatives.

In A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 2, you will be asked to read three short texts. The number of words in each text is **(1)** *always / not always* the same. There might be **(2)** *lots of / a few* words in the texts which are not in the Key wordlist, **(3)** *but you won't / and you will* need to understand these to answer the questions correctly. There are **(4)** *six / seven* questions to answer, with three possible answers for each question (A, B or C). The three texts will **(5)** *always / sometimes* be about three people. The words in the questions may be found in all three texts, so you need to read the texts very **(6)** *quickly / carefully* before you choose your answer. But sometimes the answers in the texts use different words to the questions, so you need to think about other ways of saying the same thing. For example, 'it cost a lot of money' is another way of saying **(7)** *it was cheap / it was expensive*.



### Think about it

### A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 3

Complete each sentence about A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 3 Sections 1 and 2 with a number from the box.

one (x4)   two   three   four   five (x2)   250

1. In A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 3, there is ..... long text to read.
2. The text usually has ..... or ..... paragraphs.
3. The text could be a newspaper, magazine or online article and it is usually about ..... words long.
4. Opposite the text there are ..... questions.
5. Each question has ..... possible answers for you to choose from.
6. For each question, only ..... of the possible answers is correct.
7. This part tests understanding of main ideas and detailed information. Sometimes a question may test feelings, or there may be ..... or ..... questions which test the writer's opinion.
8. Sometimes you will have to answer ..... question about the whole text (for example, *What is the writer doing in this text? / What is the best title for this text?*).



### Think about it

### A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 4

Complete the information about A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 4 with the words in the box.

six   gap   encyclopedia   all   vocabulary   three   sentence   topic

1. A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 4 is mostly a test of ....., but some grammar may also be tested.
2. The text might be information from a news story or from an .....
3. You have to choose the correct word for each ..... in the text.
4. For each question, you choose from ..... possible answers.
5. There are ..... questions to answer altogether.
6. It's a good idea to just read the text first. This gives you an idea of the ..... and the general meaning of the whole text.
7. As you answer each question, read the whole ..... to help you choose the correct answer.
8. .... of the words in Part 4 are in the A2 Key wordlist.



### Think about it

### A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 5

Complete the sentences about A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 5 with the verbs in the box.

answer   choose   fill   read   show   spell   think   write

In A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 5, you have to **(1)** ..... a short text or two short texts, and **(2)** ..... in the gaps. The texts will usually be emails, letters or notes. If there are two texts, the second will be a response to the first. For example, the first text might be an invitation, and the second text will **(3)** ..... that invitation. There are ten gaps to fill in, plus an example to **(4)** ..... you what to do. There are no words to **(5)** ..... from – you have to **(6)** ..... of the missing word. You should **(7)** ..... only one word in each gap, and you must **(8)** ..... the word correctly. Part 5 tests grammar, and the missing words will usually be auxiliary verbs, modal verbs, prepositions, pronouns or determiners.



### Think about it

### A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 6

Match the questions (1–5) about A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 6 with the answers (a–e).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Is A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 6 a reading or writing exercise?</li> <li>2. What type of message do I need to write?</li> <li>3. What information do I need to include?</li> <li>4. How long should my answer be?</li> <li>5. Can I write more words than the question asks for?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a You need to write an email to a friend.</li> <li>b You must write 25 words or more.</li> <li>c It is a writing task.</li> <li>d Yes, but you only need to answer the three questions/instructions to get full marks. Don't spend too long on Part 6 because you need time for Part 7.</li> <li>e You will see three short questions or instructions. You need to answer all of them in your email.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|



## Think about it

### A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 7

Read about A2 Key Reading and Writing Part 7. Are the sentences TRUE or FALSE?

1. In this part of the exam, I have to write an article. ....
2. I need to write 35 words or more. ....
3. There are four pictures to look at. ....
4. I must write about the main events of the pictures. ....
5. To get full marks, my spelling, grammar and vocabulary must be perfect. ....
6. If I write 100 words, I will get full marks. ....
7. It's a good idea to use more than one paragraph and/or linking words. ....
8. I should write my story on a piece of paper before writing the final answer on my answer sheet. ....



## Think about it

### A2 Key Listening Part 1

Match 1–8 with a–h to make sentences about A2 Key Listening Part 1.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. In A2 Key Listening Part 1, there are                  | a or a shop assistant and a customer, for example. |
| 2. Every question has                                     | b between two people.                              |
| 3. You have to  | c choose one answer for each question, A, B or C.  |
| 4. You will hear a conversation                           | d five questions.                                  |
| 5. The conversations may be between friends or relatives, | e three answer options, based on pictures.         |
| 6. You need to listen for important information, such as  | f each conversation twice.                         |
| 7. You will hear  | g times, prices, days of the week or numbers.      |
| 8. You need to choose and write your answers              | h while you are listening to the conversations.    |





### **Think about it**

### **A2 Key Listening Part 2**

**Read the sentences about A2 Key Listening Part 2. Are the answers TRUE or FALSE?**

1. In A2 Key Listening Part 2, you will hear two people talking. ....
2. The speakers will always have a British accent. ....
3. You will complete a message or notes with information. ....
4. You need to choose from A, B or C answers. ....
5. The answer will always be one word. ....
6. You can make spelling mistakes in this part of the exam. ....
7. There are five gaps to complete in a text. ....
8. The speakers might spell some of the difficult words. ....



### **Think about it**

### **A2 Key Listening Part 3**

**Read the sentences about A2 Key Listening Part 3 and choose the correct alternatives.**

1. In A2 Key Listening Part 3, you answer the questions by *choosing A, B or C / writing a word*.
2. You listen to *one long conversation / five short conversations*.
3. You listen to *two / four* people talking.
4. There are *five / eight* questions to answer.
5. The speakers *know / don't know* each other.
6. The speakers talk about *school, university or work / something they are interested in*.
7. You must choose *one answer / two answers* for each question.
8. You are given *one point / two points* for every correct answer.



## Think about it

### A2 Key Listening Part 4

Read the paragraph about A2 Key Listening Part 4 and answer the questions.

In Part 4 of the A2 Key Listening test, you have to answer five questions. You will hear five short conversations (with 2 speakers) or monologues (just 1 speaker). The question describes what the situation is, for example it could be two friends or family members, or the speakers could be strangers, for example a shop assistant and a customer. You are listening for the main idea or the topic, and you need to choose from A, B or C answers. Most of the words and grammatical structures will be from the A2 Key wordlist or the list of Grammatical Areas in the A2 Key Handbook. A speaker may use a few words and/or grammatical structures that are higher than A2 Key level. However, it should be possible to get the correct answer even if you don't understand every word. You should write on the question paper while you are listening.

1. How many questions are there in A2 Key Listening Part 4?
2. How many speakers will there be in each question?
3. Who might the speakers be?
4. What sort of information are you listening for?
5. Is all the vocabulary you will hear from the A2 Key wordlist?
6. Where do you have to write your answers while you are listening?



## Think about it

### A2 Key Listening Part 5

Complete the information about A2 Key Listening Part 5 with the words in the box.

activities   answer   daily   eight   end   five   question   simple   twice   two

In A2 Key Listening Part 5, you need to understand a **(1)** ..... conversation between **(2)** ..... people. They might be talking about topics such as free time **(3)** ..... , travel or **(4)** ..... life. You will hear the conversation **(5)** ..... . There are **(6)** ..... questions and you have to choose from **(7)** ..... options. You should write your answers on the **(8)** ..... paper while you listen and you have time at the **(9)** ..... of the Listening test to write your answers onto the **(10)** ..... sheet in pencil.



## Think about it

### A2 Key Speaking Part 1

Read the paragraph about A2 Key Speaking Part 1 and answer the questions with the words in the box. You do not need to use all the words.

In the A2 Key Speaking test, there will be two examiners in the room, but only one of the examiners will talk to you. The other examiner will only listen to you. In Part 1, you need to listen to the examiner and answer their questions. There will be another student (or maybe two students) in the room, but in this part of the Speaking test, you only need to talk to the examiner.

Part 1 has two Phases: Phase 1 and Phase 2. In Phase 1, you will have to give your name, but you do not need to spell it. Next, the examiner asks you your age (in A2 Key for Schools) or if you work or study (in A2 Key). After that, you are asked where you are from or where you live. In Phase 2, the examiner will ask you some questions about two topics. These questions are about your daily life (for example, food, free time, the weather, friends/family, home). For each topic, both students have two short questions to answer. In other words, the examiner asks four short questions per topic. Then, at the end of each topic, one student answers a longer question that begins *Now, please tell me something about ...*

the other student   shorter   name   listens   two   four  
the examiner   hobbies   age   nationality   longer   talks

1. There are two examiners in the Speaking test: one who asks the questions and one who only .....
2. In Speaking Part 1, you speak to .....
3. In Part 1 Phase 1, first you are asked your .....
4. In Part 1 Phase 1, you will be asked either about your ..... or about your job / studies. Then you are asked where you are from / where you live.
5. In Part 1 Phase 2, the examiner asks you personal questions about ..... different topics.
6. At the end of each topic, the examiner asks a ..... question.



Read the text. Then match the questions (1–6) about the A2 Key Speaking test Part 2 with the answers (a–f).

A2 Key Speaking Part 2 has two phases: Phase 1 and Phase 2.

In Phase 1, you and the other student have a discussion for 1 to 2 minutes. The examiner gives you five pictures to talk about and tells you the topic (e.g. sport, holidays, TV programmes). You have to say why you like or don't like the things in the pictures. If you can't talk for 2 minutes, the examiner will ask you one or more questions about the pictures. At the end of Part 2 Phase 1, the examiner will ask which of the things in the pictures you like best.

In Part 2 Phase 2, the examiner will ask two more discussion questions on the same topic as in Phase 1. You and the other student are asked the same questions.

**Part 2 Phase 1**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Who do you have to talk to in Part 2 Phase 1?                                 | a The examiner will ask you a question about one of the pictures. |
| 2. How long do you have to speak for?  | b The same topic as Part 2 Phase 1.                               |
| 3. What will happen if you don't speak for all the time you have?                | c The other student.  |
| 4. After you finish speaking about the pictures, what will the examiner ask you? | d Only two.   |
|  | e Between one and two minutes.                                    |
|  | f Which (picture) you like best.                                  |

**Part 2 Phase 2**

5. How many questions are there in Part 2 Phase 2?
6. What will the questions be about?